MATHEMATICS

Grade 9

Book 1

CAPS

Learner Book





Developed and funded as an ongoing project by the Sasol Inzalo Foundation in partnership with the Ukuqonda Institute.

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 1 2014/07/03 10:58:28 AM

Published by The Ukuqonda Institute

9 Neale Street, Rietondale 0084

Registered as a Title 21 company, registration number 2006/026363/08

Public Benefit Organisation, PBO Nr. 930035134

Website: http://www.ukuqonda.org.za

First published in 2014

© 2014. Copyright in the work is vested in the publisher.

Copyright in the text remains vested in the contributors.

ISBN: 978-1-920705-28-2

This book was developed with the participation of the Department of Basic Education of South Africa with funding from the Sasol Inzalo Foundation.

Contributors:

Piet Human, Erna Lampen, Marthinus de Jager, Louise Keegan, Paul van Koersveld, Nathi Makae, Enoch Masemola, Therine van Niekerk, Alwyn Olivier, Cerenus Pfeiffer, Renate Röhrs, Dirk Wessels, Herholdt Bezuidenhout

Illustrations and computer graphics:

Leonora van Staden, Lisa Steyn Illustration Zhandré Stark, Lebone Publishing Services Computer graphics for chapter frontispieces: Piet Human

Cover illustration: Leonora van Staden

Text design: Mike Schramm

Layout and typesetting: Lebone Publishing Services

Printed by: [printer name and address]

 Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb
 2

 2014/07/03
 10:58:28 AM

COPYRIGHT NOTICE

Your freedom to legally copy this book

This book is published under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 Unported License (CC BY-NC).

You are allowed and encouraged to freely copy this book. You can photocopy, print and distribute it as often as you like. You may download it onto any electronic device, distribute it via email, and upload it to your website, at no charge. You may also adapt the text and illustrations, provided you acknowledge the copyright holders ('attribute the original work').

Restrictions: You may not make copies of this book for a profit-seeking purpose. This holds for printed, electronic and web-based copies of this book, and any part of this book.

For more information about the Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 Unported (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, see http://creativecommons.org/ licenses/by-nc/4.0/

All reasonable efforts have been made to ensure that materials included are not already copyrighted to other entities, or in a small number of cases, to acknowledge copyright holders. In some cases this may not have been possible. The publishers welcome the opportunity for redress with any unacknowledged copyright holders.







Except where otherwise noted, this work is licensed under http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Maths_English_TG_gr7_prelim.indd 3 2014/08/26 02:53:16 PM

Table of contents

Term 1

Chapter 1:
Whole numbers1
Chapter 2:
Integers
Chapter 3:
Fractions39
Chapter 4:
The decimal notation for fractions57
Chapter 5:
Exponents71
Chapter 6:
Patterns85
Chapter 7:
Functions and relationships99
Chapter 8:
Algebraic expressions115
Chapter 9:
Equations143
Term 1: Revision and assessment157

Term 2

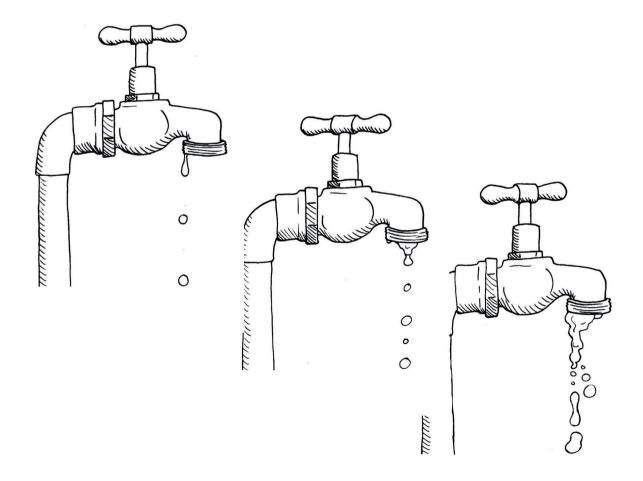
Chapter 10:
Construction of geometric figures175
Chapter 11:
Geometry of 2D shapes193
Chapter 12:
Geometry of straight lines219
Chapter 13:
Pythagoras' Theorem23
Chapter 14:
Area and perimeter of 2D shapes24
Term 2: Revision and assessment263

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 6 2014/07/03 10:58:28 AM

CHAPTER 1 Whole numbers

In this chapter you will engage with different kinds of numbers that are used for counting, measuring, solving equations and many other purposes.

1.1	Properties of numbers	2
1.2	Calculations with whole numbers	7
1.3	Multiples and factors	16
1.4	Solving problems about ratio, rate and proportion	18
1.5	Solving problems in financial contexts	20



				99	100	101	102	103
				90	91	92	93	94
				81	82	83	84	85
				72	73	74	75	76
				63	64	65	66	67
				54	55	56	57	58
				45	46	47	48	49
				36	37	38	39	40
				27	28	29	30	31
				18	19	20	21	22
				9	10	11	12	13
-4	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3	4
-13	-12	-11	-10	- 9				
-22	-21	-20	-19	-18				
-31	-30	-29	-28	-27				
-40	-39	-38	-37	-36				
-49	-48	-47	-46	-45				
-58	-57	-56	-55	-54				
-67	-66	-65	-64	-63				
-76	-75	-74	-73	-72				
-85	-84	-83	-82	-81				
-94	-93	-92	-91	-90				
-103	-102	-101	-100	-99				
-112	-111	-110	-109	-108				

Whole numbers

1.1 Properties of numbers

DIFFERENT TYPES OF NUMBERS

The natural numbers

The numbers that we use to count are called **natural numbers**:

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14

Natural numbers have the following properties:

When you add two or more natural numbers, you get a natural number again.

When you multiply two or more natural numbers, you get a natural number again.

Mathematicians describe this by saying: The system of natural numbers is **closed under** addition and multiplication.

However, when a natural number is subtracted from another natural number the answer is not always a natural number again. For example, there is no natural number that provides the answer to 5 - 20.

Similarly, when a natural number is divided by another natural number the answer is not always a natural number again. For example, there is no natural number that provides the answer to $10 \div 3$.

The system of natural numbers is **not closed under** subtraction or division.

When subtraction or division is done with natural numbers, the answers are not always natural numbers.

- 1. (a) Is there a smallest natural number, that means a natural number that is smaller than all other natural numbers? If so, what is it?
 - (b) Is there a largest natural number, in other words, a natural number that is larger than all other natural numbers? If so, what is it?
- 2. In each of the following cases, say whether the answer is a natural number or not.
 - (a) 100 + 400
 - (b) 100 400(c) 100 × 400
 - (d) 100 ÷ 400

The whole numbers

Although we don't use 0 for counting, we need it to write numbers. Without 0, we would need a special symbol for 10, all multiples of 10 and some other numbers. For example, all the numbers that belong in the yellow cells below would need a special symbol.

41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69
71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99
111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119

The natural numbers combined with 0 is called the system of **whole numbers**.

If you are working with natural numbers and you add two numbers, the answer will always be different from any of the two numbers added. For example:

21 + 25 = 46 and 24 + 1 = 25. If you are working with whole numbers, in other words including 0, this is not the case. When 0 is added to a number the answer is just the number you start with: 24 + 0 = 24.

For this reason, 0 is called the **identity element** for addition. In the set of natural numbers there is no identity element for addition.

3. Is there an identity element for multiplication in the whole numbers? Explain your answer.

•••••

- 4. (a) What is the smallest natural number?
 - (b) What is the smallest whole number?

The integers

In the set of whole numbers, no answer is available when you subtract a number from a number smaller than itself. For example there is no whole number that is the answer for 5 – 8. But there is an answer to this subtraction in the system of integers.

5 - 8 = -3. The number -3 is read as "negative 3" or "minus 3".

The whole numbers start with 0 and extend in one direction:

 $0 \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad \rightarrow \quad \rightarrow \quad \dots$

The integers extend in both directions:

 $\dots \qquad \leftarrow \quad \leftarrow \quad \leftarrow \quad \leftarrow \quad -5 \quad -4 \quad -3 \quad -2 \quad -1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6 \quad \rightarrow \quad \rightarrow \quad \rightarrow \quad \dots$

All whole numbers are also integers. The set of whole numbers forms part of the set of integers. For each whole number, there is a negative number that corresponds with it. The negative number -5 corresponds to the whole number 5 and the negative number -120 corresponds to the whole number 120.

Within the set of integers, the sum of two numbers can be 0.

For example 20 + (-20) = 0 and 135 + (-135) = 0.

20 and -20 are called **additive inverses** of each other.

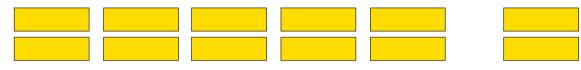
5. Calculate the following without using a calculator.

(a) 100 – 165 (b) 300 – 700

6. You may use a calculator to calculate the following:

(a) 123 – 765 (b) 385 – 723

The rational numbers



7. Five people share 12 slabs of chocolate equally among them.

(a) Will each person get more or less than two full slabs of chocolate?

(b) Can each person get another half of a slab?

(c) How much more than two full slabs can each person get, if the two remaining slabs are divided as shown here?



(d) Will each person get 2,4 or $2\frac{2}{5}$ slab?

The system of integers does not provide an answer for all possible division questions. For example, as we see above, the answer for $12 \div 5$ is not an integer.

To have answers for all possible division questions, we have to extend the number system to include fractions and negative fractions, in other words, numbers of the form integer. This system of numbers is called the **rational numbers**. We can represent rational numbers as common fractions or as decimal numbers.

8. Express the answers for each of the following division problems in two ways: using the common fraction notation and using the decimal notation for fractions.

(a) $23 \div 10$

(b) $23 \div 5$

(c) $230 \div 100$

(d) $8 \div 10$

9. Answer the statement by writing 'yes' or 'no' in the appropriate cell.

Statement	Natural numbers	Whole numbers	Integers	Rational numbers
The sum of two numbers is a number of the same kind (closed under addition).				
The sum of two numbers is always bigger than either of the two numbers.				
When one number is subtracted from another, the answer is a number of the same kind (closed under subtraction).				
When one number is subtracted from another, the answer is always smaller than the first number.				
The product of two numbers is a number of the same kind (closed under addition).				
The product of two numbers is always bigger than either of the two numbers.				
The quotient of two numbers is a number of the same kind (closed under division).				
The quotient of two numbers is always smaller than the first of the two numbers.				

Irrational numbers

Rational numbers do not provide for all situations that may occur in mathematics. For example, there is no rational number which will produce the answer 2 when it is multiplied by itself.

 $(number) \times (same number) = 2$

 $2 \times 2 = 4$ and $1 \times 1 = 1$, so clearly, this number must be between 1 and 2.

But there is no number which can be expressed as a fraction, in either the common fraction or the decimal notation, which will solve this problem. Numbers like these are called **irrational numbers**.

Here are some more examples of irrational numbers:

 $\sqrt{5}$

 $\sqrt{10}$

 $\sqrt{3}$

 $\sqrt{7}$

π

The rational and the irrational numbers together are called the **real numbers**.

1.2 Calculations with whole numbers

Do not use a calculator at all in Section 1.2.

ESTIMATING, ROUNDING OFF AND COMPENSATING

1.	A shop owner wants to buy chickens from a farmer. The farmer wants R38 for each chicken. Answer the following questions without doing written calculations.												
		If the shop owner has R10 000 to buy											
		than 500 chickens?											
	(b)	Do you think he can buy more than 2											
		Do you think he can buy more than 2											
w	hat y	you were trying to do in question 1 is c ng with numbers, means to try to get c culations. However, you can do other,	alled estima t lose to an ansv	tion . To estimate, when wer without actually doing									
nu of by	mbe 51 c calc	en the goal is not to get an accurate ansers may be rounded off. For example, thickens at R38 each may be approxin culating 50 × 40. This is clearly much ealculating 51 × R38.	he cost nated	To approximate something means to try to find out more or less how much it is, without measuring or calculating it precisely.									
2.	(b)	How much is 5×4 ? How much is 5×40 ? How much is 50×40 ?	• • • • • • • • • • • • •										
,	This	est of 51 chickens at R38 each is approx approximation was obtained by round le of 10, and then calculating with the	ding both 51 a	and 38 off to the nearest									
3.	wit esti ma	each case, estimate the cost by rounding hout using a calculator. In each case mate by rounding the numbers off to ke a better estimate by rounding the numbers are sold for R243 each.	hake two estime the nearest 10 mbers off to th	nates. First make a rough 0 before calculating. Then									
	•••		•••••										
		R5 673 is added to R3 277.		abtracted from R1 234.									
	•••	••••••••••••	• • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •									
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • •										

Suppose you have to calculate R823 – R273.

An estimate can be made by rounding the numbers off to the nearest 100:

R800 - R300 = R500.

4.	(a)	By working with R800 instead of R823, an error was introduced into your
		answer. How can this error be corrected: by adding R23 to the R500, or by
		subtracting it from R500?

(b) Correct the error to get a better estimate.

(c) Now also correct the error that was made by subtracting R300 instead of R273.

•••••

What you did in question 4 is called **compensating for errors**.

5. Estimate each of the following by rounding off the numbers to the nearest 100.

(a) 812 – 342

(b) 2342 - 1876

(c) 812 + 342

(d) 2342 + 1876

(e) 9 + 278

(f) 3 231 – 1 769

(g) 8 234 – 2 776

(h) 5 213 – 3 768

6. Find the exact answer for each of the calculations in question 5, by working out the errors caused by rounding, and compensating for them.

(a)

(b)

(c) (d)

.....

	(e)			(f)	
	• • • • • •	• • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	••••••
	(g)	• • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
	•••••				
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
A	DDING	IN COLUMN	NS .		
Yc	(b) Wri	te 3 000 + 70 te 5 486 in ex	0 + 50 + 8 as a single expanded notation, as	shown in 1(b).	
	Step 1	3 758 5 486 8 000		short, as shown on the	3 758 5 486 9 244
	Step 2 Step 3 Step 4	1 100 130 14 9 244		harder on the brain, but	
2.	Explain	how the nun	nbers in each of steps	s 1 to 4 are obtained.	
	•••••				
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • •			
	• • • • • •			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	

It is only possible to use the shorter method if you add the units first, then add the tens, then the hundreds and finally, the thousands. You can then do what you did in question 1(a), without writing the separate terms of the expanded form.

3.	Calculate each of the following without u	ısing a calculator.
	(a) 3878 + 3784	(b) 298 + 8 594
	•••••	•••••
	•••••	•••••
	(c) 10 921 + 2 472	(d) 1 298 + 18 782
	•••••	•••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	•••••
4.	A farmer buys a truck for R645 840, a trac a bakkie for R435 690.	tor for R783 356, a plough for R83 999 and
	(a) Estimate to the nearest R100 000 how	w much these items will cost altogether.
	(b) Use a calculator to calculate the total	cost.
	•••••	
	•••••	
5.	An investor makes R543 682 in one day of on the same day.	n the stock market and then loses R264 359
	(a) Estimate to the nearest R100 000 how that day.	v much money she has made in total on
	••••••••••	••••••••••
	(b) Use a calculator to determine how m	uch money she has made.
	•••••••••••	••••••

MULTIPLYING IN COLUMNS

1.	(a)	Write 3 489 in expanded notation:												
	\ /	1	 •	• •	 	 	•	 	 	 	 		 	 •

(b) Write an expression without brackets that is equivalent to

 7×3489 may be calculated as shown on the left below.

	3 489	A shorter method is shown on the right.	3 489
	× 7		× 7
Step 1	63		24 423
Step 2	560		
Step 3	2 800		
Step 4	21 000		
	24 423		

2. Explain how the numbers in each of steps 1 to 4 on the above left are obtained.

•••••

 47×3489 may be calculated as shown on the left below.

	3 489	A shorter method is shown on the right.	3 489
	× 47		× 47
Step 1	63		24 423
Step 2	560		139 560
Step 3	2 800		163 983
Step 4	21 000		

Step 5	360
Step 6	3 200
Step 7	16 000
Step 8	120 000

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

4.	Explain how the number 139 560 that appears in the shorter form on the above
	right is obtained.

SUBTRACTING IN COLUMNS

1.	Write	each	of the	following	as a	single	number.
				0		- 0 -	

2. If you worked correctly you should have obtained the same answers for questions 1(a) and 1(b). If this was not the case, redo your work.

The expression 7000 + 1300 + 120 + 12 was formed from 8000 + 400 + 30 + 2 by

- taking 1 000 away from 8 000 and adding it to the hundreds term to get 1 400,
- taking 100 away from 1 400 and adding it to the tens term to get 130, and
- taking 10 away from 130 and adding it to the units term to get 12.
- 3. Form an expression like the expression in 1(b) for each of the following:

(a)
$$8000 + 200 + 100 + 4$$

(b)
$$3000 + 400 + 30 + 1$$

4. Write expressions like in question 1(b) for the numbers below.

8 432 – 3 957 can be calculated as shown below.

	8 432	To do the subtraction in each column, you need to think of
	- 3 957	8432 as $8000 + 400 + 30 + 2$, in fact you have to think of it as
Step 1	5	$7\ 000 + 1\ 300 + 120 + 12$.
Step 2	70	In step 1, the 7 of 3 957 is subtracted from 12.
Step 3	400	
Step 4	4 000	
Step 5	4 475	

- 5. (a) How is the 70 in step 2 obtained?
 - (b) How is the 400 in step 3 obtained?
 - (c) How is the 4 000 in step 4 obtained?

(d) How is the 4 475 in step 5 obtained?

ne	cause of the zeros obtained in steps 2, 3 and ed not be written separately as shown about ally be shown in the short way on the rigory.	ve. The work can	8 432 - <u>3 957</u> 4 475
6.	Calculate each of the following without u	ısing a calculator.	
	(a) 9 123 – 3 784	(b) 8 284 – 3 547	
	•••••	•••••	• • • •
	••••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •
7.	Use a calculator to check your answers. If	your answers are wrong, try again.	
8	Calculate each of the following without u	ışing a calculator	
٠.	(a) 7 243 – 3 182	(b) 6 221 – 1 888	
	(a) 7210 0102	(6) 0 221 1 000	
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••	• • • •
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	•••••	• • • •
Yo	u may use a calculator to do the questions	below.	
9.	Bettina has R87 456 in her savings accour How much money is left in her savings ac	•	ar.
	•••••••••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
10	Liesbet starts a savings account by making time she does the following transactions		of
	a withdrawal of R4 000		
	a withdrawal of R2 780		
	a deposit of R1 200		
	a deposit of R7 550		
	a withdrawal of R5 230		
	a deposit of R8 990		
	a deposit of R1 234		
	-	ovings account now?	
	How much money does she have in her sa	avings account now:	• • • • • •
11.	(a) R34 537 – R13 267	(b) R135 349 – R78 239	
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •

CHAPTER 1: WHOLE NUMBERS

13

2014/07/03 10:58:30 AM

LONG DIVISION

Study this method for calculating 13 254 \div 56:

So $13\ 254 \div 56 = 236$ remainder 38, or $13\ 254 \div 56 = 236 \frac{38}{56} = 236 \frac{19}{28}$, which can also be written as 236,68 (correct to two decimal figures).

which can also be written as 250,00 (correct to two decimaring)

The work can also be set out as follows:

1. (a) Mlungisi's work to do a certain calculation is shown on the right. What is the question that		463 78 36 177
Mlungisi tries to answer?	Step 1	31 200
	Step 2	4 977
(b) Where does the number 31 200 in step 1 come from?	Step 3	4 680
How did Mlungisi obtain it, and for what purpose	Step 4	297
did he calculate it?	Step 5	<u>234</u>
U. U		63
•••••		
(c) Explain step 2 in the same way as you explained step 1.		
	• • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •
(d) Explain step 3.		

2.	Calculate each of the following without using a calculator.							
	(a) $33030 \div 63$	(b) 18 450 ÷ 27						
	•••••	•••••						
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••						
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •						
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •						
	•••••	•••••						
	•••••	•••••						
	•••••	•••••						
	•••••	•••••						
	•••••	•••••						
3.	Use a calculator to check your answers to again. It is important that you learn to do							
4.	Calculate each of the following without u	sing a calculator.						
	(a) 76 287 ÷ 287	(b) 65 309 ÷ 44						
	•••••	•••••						
	•••••	•••••						
	••••••	•••••						
	•••••	•••••						
	•••••	•••••						
	•••••	•••••						
	••••••	•••••						
	••••••	•••••						
	••••••	•••••						
	••••••	•••••						
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •						
Us	se your calculator to do questions 5 and 6 b	elow.						
5.	A municipality has budgeted R85 000 for street name boards cost R72 each. How mand how much money will be left in the boards to the boards of the boards and how much money will be left in the boards.	any new street name boards can be put up,						
	•••••							
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •						
6.		pplying 3 450 school desks. A school supply 2 250 of the same desks. Which provider is actually charge for one school desk?						
	•••••							

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 15 2014/07/03 10:58:31 AM

CHAPTER 1: WHOLE NUMBERS

1.3 Multiples and factors

LOWEST COMMON MULTIPLES AND PRIME FACTORISATION

1. Consecutive multiples of 6, starting at 6 itself, are shown in the table below.

6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120
126	132	138	144	150	156	162	168	174	180
186	192	198	204	210	216	222	228	234	240

(a) The table below also shows multiples of a number. What is the number?

15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
165	180	195	210	225	240	255	270	285	300
315	330	345	360	375	390	405	420	435	450
465	480	495	510	525	540	555	570	585	600

- (b) Draw rough circles around all the numbers that occur in both the above tables.
- (c) What is the smallest number that occurs in both tables?

90 is a multiple of 6, it is also a multiple of 15.

90 is called a **common multiple** of 6 and 15, it is a multiple of both.

The smallest number that is a multiple of both 6 and 15 is the number 30.

30 is called the **lowest common multiple** or **LCM** of 6 and 15.

2. Calculate, without using a calculator.

(a)
$$2 \times 3 \times 5 \times 7 \times 11$$

(b)
$$2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 7 \times 13$$

•••••

(c) $2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 5 \times 13$

(d) $3 \times 5 \times 5 \times 17$

Check your answers by using a calculator or by comparing with some classmates.

2 is a factor of each of the numbers 2 310, 1 820 and 3 510.

Another way of saying this is: 2 is a **common factor** of 2 310, 1 820 and 3 510.

3.	(a) Is 2×3 , in other words, 6, a common factor of 2 310 and 3 510?						
	(b) Is $2 \times 3 \times 5$, in other words, 30, a common factor of 2 310 and 3 510?						
		an 30 that is a common factor of 2 310 and 3 510?					
30) is called the highest common fa	ctor or HCF of 2 310 and 3 510.					
	_	rime factors of the numbers 2 310, 1 820, 3 510					
	nd 1 275.	The factors of the humbers 2 510, 1 620, 5 510					
	The LCM of two numbers can be formultiplying all the prime factors of without repeating (except where a repeated as a factor in one of the number that are continuitiplying the factors that are contwo numbers, i.e. in the list of prime both numbers.	f both numbers, number is umbers). Found by mmon to the					
4.	In each case find the HCF and LCM of the numbers.						
	(a) 1 820 and 3 510	(b) 2 310 and 1 275					
	••••						
	••••						
	••••						
	(c) 1 820 and 3 510 and 1 275	(d) 2 310 and 1 275 and 1 820					
	••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
	•••••						
	••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
	••••						
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
	(e) 780 and 7 700	(f) 360 and 1 360					
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
	••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
	•••••						

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 17 2014/07/03 10:58:31 AM

CHAPTER 1: WHOLE NUMBERS

1.4 Solving problems about ratio, rate and proportion

RATIO AND RATE PROBLEMS

1.	Moeneba collects	apples in the orchard.	She picks about 5 a	ipples each minute.
	Approximately ho	ow many apples will Mo	oeneba pick in each	n of the following
	periods of time?			
	(a) 8 minutes	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	(b) 11 minutes	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	(c) 15 minutes	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	(d) 20 minutes	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

In the situation described in question 1, Moeneba picks apples **at a rate of** about 5 apples **per minute**.

2. Garth and Kate also collect apples in the orchard, but they both work faster than Moeneba. Garth collects at a rate of about 12 apples per minute, and Kate collects at a rate of about 15 apples per minute. Complete the following table to show approximately how many apples they will each collect in different periods of time.

Period of time in min	1	2	3	8	10	20
Moeneba	5			40		
Garth	12					
Kate	15					
The three together	32					

In this situation, the number of apples picked is **directly proportional** to the time taken.

If you filled the table in correctly, you will notice that during any period of time, Kate collected 3 times as many apples as Moeneba. We can say that during any time interval, the **ratio** between the numbers of apples collected by Moeneba and Kate is **3 to 1**, which can be written as **3:1**. For any period of time, the ratio between the numbers of apples collected by Garth and Moeneba is 12:5.

3.	(a)	What is the ratio between the numbers of apples collected by Kate and Garth
		during a period of time?
	(b)	Would it be correct to also say that the ratio between the numbers of apples collected by Kate and Garth is 5:4? Explain your answer.

4.	To make biscuits of a certain kind, 5 parts of flour has to be mixed with 2 parts of oatmeal, and 1 part of cocoa powder. How much oatmeal and how much cocoa powder must be used if 500 g of flour is used?
	•••••
5.	A motorist covers a distance of 360 km in exactly 4 hours. (a) Approximately how far did the motorist drive in 1 hour?
	(b) Do you think the motorist covered exactly 90 km in each of the 4 hours?
	Explain your answer briefly.
	•••••
	(c) Approximately how far will the motorist drive in 7 hours?
	(d) Approximately how long will the motorist need to travel 900 km?
So	me people use these formulae to do calculations like those in question 5.
i	average speed = $\frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}$, which here means distance ÷ time
	distance = average speed × time
1	time = $\frac{\text{distance}}{\text{average speed}}$, which here means distance ÷ average speed
6.	For each of questions 5(c) and 5(d), state which formula will produce the correct answer.
7.	A motorist completes a journey in three sections, making two long stops to eat and relax between sections. During section A he covers 440 km in 4 hours. During section B he covers 540 km in 6 hours. During section C he covers 280 km in 4 hours. (a) Calculate his average speed over each of the three sections.
	•••••
	•••••
	•••••
	(b) Calculate his average speed for the journey as a whole.
	••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(c) On the next day, the motorist has to travel 874 km. How much time (stops excluded) will he need to do this? Justify your answer with calculations.
	••••••••••••••••••••••••

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 19 2014/07/03 10:58:32 AM

CHAPTER 1: WHOLE NUMBERS

8. Different vehicles travel at different average speeds. A large transport truck with a heavy load travels much slower than a passenger car. A small bakkie is also slower than a passenger car. In the following table, some average speeds and the times needed are given for different vehicles that all have to be driven for the same distance of 720 km. Complete the table.

Time in hours	12	9	8	6	5
Average speed in km/h	60				

Ω	I a alrattha	table .	ross borro	:	ammlated	1
9.	Look at the	table	you nave	Just Co	ompieted	١.

(a) What happens to the time needed if the average speed increases?

- (b) What happens to the average speed if the time is reduced?
- (c) What can you say about the product average speed × time, for the numbers in the table?

In the situation above, the average speed is said to be **indirectly proportional** to the time needed for the journey.

Solving problems in financial contexts 1.5

You may use a calculator in Section 1.5.

DISCOUNT, PROFIT AND LOSS

- 1. (a) R12 800 is divided equally between 100 people. How much money does each person get?
 - (b) How much money do eight of the people together get?

Another word for hundredths is **percent**.

Instead of $\frac{5}{100}$ we can write 5%. The symbol % means exactly the same as $\frac{5}{100}$. In question 1(a) you calculated $\frac{1}{100}$ or 1% of R12 800, and in question 1(b) you calculated $\frac{8}{100}$ or 8% of R12 800.

The amount that a dealer pays for an article is called the **cost price**. The price marked on the article is called the **marked price** and the price of the article after discount is the **selling price**.

2.	The marked prices of some articles are given below. A discount of 15% is offered to customers who pay cash. In each case calculate how much a customer who pays cash will actually pay.					
	(a)	R850	(b) R140			
	. ,	R32 600	(d) R138			
			••••••••••••			
		ought a couch at a sale. It was marked as given a discount of R700.	R3 500 but she paid only R2 800.			
		What percentage discount was given to L	ina?			
Th	nis q	uestion means:				
		How many hundredths of the marked price	ce were taken off?			
To pr	ans ice i	wer the question we need to know how s.	w much $\frac{1}{100}$ (one hundredth) of the marked			
3.	(a)	How much is $\frac{1}{100}$ of R3 500?	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
	(b)	How many hundredths of R3 500 is t	he same as R700?			
		What percentage discount was given	to Lisa: 10% or 20%?			
	•••	•••••	•••••			
4.	The	e cost price, marked price and selling p	orice of some articles are listed below.			
		cicle A: Cost price = R240, marked price				
		cicle B: Cost price = R540, marked price				
		cicle C: Cost price = R1 200, marked pri				
		e profit is the difference between the co				
	For	each of the above articles, calculate th	ne percentage discount and profit.			
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				
	•••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				
	•••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				
	•••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
	•••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
	•••					

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 21 2014/07/03 10:58:33 AM

CHAPTER 1: WHOLE NUMBERS

5.	Remey decided to work from home and bought herself a sewing machine for R750. She planned to make 40 covers for scatter cushions. The fabric and other items she needed cost her R3 600. Remey planned to sell the covers at R150 each.						
	(a) How much profit could Remey make if she sold all 40 covers at this price?						
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••						
	••••••						
	(b) Remey managed to sell only 25 of the covers and decided to sell the rest at R100 each. Calculate her percentage profit.						
	••••••						
	••••••						
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••						
6.	Zadie bakes and sells pies to earn some extra income. The cost of the ingredients for her chicken pies came to about R68. She sold the pies for R60. Did she make a profit or a loss? Calculate the percentage loss or profit.						
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••						
Н	IRE PURCHASE						
im to in:	metimes you need an item but do not have enough money to pay the full amount amediately. One option is to buy the item on hire purchase (HP) . You will have pay a deposit and sign an agreement in which you undertake to pay monthly stalments until you have paid the full amount. Therefore: HP price = deposit + total of instalments are difference between the HP price and the cash price is the interest that the dealer						
ch	arges you for allowing you to pay off the item over a period of time.						
1.	Sara buys a flat screen television on hire purchase. The cash price is R4 199. She has to pay a deposit of R950 and 12 monthly instalments of R360.						
	(a) Calculate the total HP price.						
	(b) How much interest does she pay?						

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 22 2014/07/03 10:58:33 AM

2.	Susie buys a car on hire purchase. The car costs R130 000. She pays a 10% deposit on the cash price and will have to pay monthly instalments of R4 600 for a period of three years. David buys the same car, but chooses another option where he has to pay a 35% deposit on the cash price and monthly instalments of R3 950 for two years. (a) Calculate the HP price for both options.
	•••••
	•••••
	(b) Calculate the difference between the total price paid by Susie and by David.
	(c) Calculate the interest that Susie and David have to pay as a percentage of the cash price.
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	••••••
	••••••
SI	MPLE INTEREST
wi in	hen interest is calculated for a number of years on an amount (i.e. a fixed deposit) thout the interest being added to the amount each year for the purpose of later terest calculations, it is referred to as simple interest. If the amount is invested for part a year, the time must be written as a fraction of a year.
1.	Interest rates are normally expressed as percentages. This makes it easier to compare rates. Express each of the following as a percentage:
	(a) A rate of R5 for every R100
	(b) A rate of R7,50 for every R50
	(c) A rate of R20 for every R200
	(d) A rate of <i>x</i> rands for every <i>a</i> rands

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 23 2014/07/03 10:58:33 AM

CHAPTER 1: WHOLE NUMBERS

2.	Annie deposits R8 345 into a savings account at Bonus Bank. The interest rate is 9% per annum. Per annum means "per year".								
	(a) How much intere	_			e end of t	he first yea	ar?		
	period, and to wit	(b) Annie decides to leave the deposit of R8 345 with the bank for an indefinite period, and to withdraw only the interest at the end of every year. How much interest does she receive over a period of five years?							
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
3.	Maxi invested R3 500 For what period did sh				annum. I	Her total iı	nterest was R875.		
4.	Money is invested for of equivalent rates.								
	Sum invested (R)	1 000	2 500	8 000	20 000	90 000	х		
	Interest earned (R)								
5.	interest due on an acc	Interest on overdue accounts is charged at a rate of 20% per annum. Calculate the interest due on an account that is 10 days overdue if the amount owing is R260. (Give your answer to the nearest cent.)							
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
6.	A sum of money invested in the bank at 5% per annum, simple interest, amounted to R6 250 after 5 years. This final amount includes the interest. Thuli figured out that the final amount is $(1+0.05\times5)\times$ amount invested.								
	(a) Explain Thuli's thinking.								
	•••••								
	•••••								
	••••••								
	(b) Calculate the amo								
	••••••	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • •		

24 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 1

COMPOUND INTEREST

When the interest earned each year is added to the original amount, and the interest for the following year is calculated on this new amount, the result is known as **compound interest**.

Ex	kample:		
R2	2000 is invested a	t 10% per annum compound interest:	
End of 1st year:		Amount = $R2000 + R200$ interest = $R2200$	
En	nd of 2nd year:	Amount = $R2\ 200 + R220$ interest = $R2\ 420$	
En	nd of 3rd year:	Amount = R2 420 + R242 interest = R2 662	
1.	An amount of R20 000 is invested at 5% per annum compound interest.		
	(a) What is the	total value of the investment after 1 year?	
		total value of the investment after 2 years?	•
		total value of the investment after 3 years?	•
	•••••		•
2.		fering an investment scheme over two years at a compound interest innum. Mr Pillay wishes to invest R800 in this way.	t
	(a) How much	money will be due to him at the end of the two-year period?	
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•
		interest will have been earned during the two years?	•
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•
3.	for Christmas. T Building Society Zinzi claims tha	zi are arguing about interest on money that they have been given hey each received R750. Andrew wants to invest his money in ABC for 2 years at a compound interest rate of 14% per annum, while t she will do better at Bonus Bank, earning 15% simple interest per ears. Who is correct?	
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		•

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 25 2014/07/03 10:58:33 AM

25

4.	Mr Martin invests R12 750 for 3 years compounded quarterly (i.e. four times a year) at 5,3%.
	(a) How many conversion periods will his investment have altogether?
	(b) How much is his investment worth after 3 years?
	(c) Calculate the total interest that he earns on his initial investment.
	••••••
5.	Calculate the interest generated by an investment (<i>P</i>) of R5 000 at 10% (<i>r</i>) compound interest over a period (<i>n</i>) of 3 years. <i>A</i> is the final amount. Use the formula $A = P(1 + \frac{r}{100})^n$ to calculate the interest.
	••••••
	••••••
E	XCHANGE RATE AND COMMISSION
1.	(a) Tim bought £650 at the foreign exchange desk at Gatwick Airport in the UK at a rate of R15,66 per £1. The desk also charged 2,5% commission on the transaction. How much did Tim spend to buy the pounds?
	(b) What was the value of R1 in British pounds on that day?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
_	
2.	Mandy wants to order a book from the internet. The price of the book is \$25,86. What is the price of the book in rands? Take the exchange rate as R9,95 for \$1.
2.	
	What is the price of the book in rands? Take the exchange rate as R9,95 for \$1.

26 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 1

CHAPTER 2 Integers

In this chapter you will work with numbers smaller than 0. These numbers are called negative numbers. They have special properties that make them useful for specific purposes, for example they enable us to solve an equation such as x + 20 = 10.

2.1	Which numbers are smaller than 0?	. 29
2.2	Adding and subtracting with integers	30
2.3	Multiplying and dividing with integers	32
2.4	Powers, roots and word problems	37

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 27 2014/07/03 10:58:33 AM

5 + -15 =	515 =	5 × -15 =
4 + -14 =	414 =	$4 \times -14 =$
3 + -13 =	313 =	3 × -13 =
2 + -12 =	212 =	$2 \times -12 =$
1 + -11 =	111 =	1 × -11 =
0 + -10 =	010 =	0 × -10 =
-1 + -9 =	-19 =	-1 × -9 =
-2 + -8 =	-28 =	$-2 \times -8 =$
-3 + -7 =	-37 =	$-3 \times -7 =$
-4 + -6 =	-46 =	$-4 \times -6 =$
-5 + -5 =	-55 =	$-5 \times -5 =$
-6 + -4 =	-64 =	$-6 \times -4 =$
−7 + −3 =	-73 =	$-7 \times -3 =$
−8 + −2 =	-82 =	$-8 \times -2 =$
-9 + -1 =	-91 =	$-9 \times -1 =$
-10 + 0 =	-10 - 0 =	-10 × 0 =
-11 + 1 =	-11 - 1 =	-11 × 1 =
-12 + 2 =	-12 - 2 =	-12 × 2 =
-13 + 3 =	-13 - 3 =	-13 × 3 =
-14 + 4 =	-14 - 4 =	-14 × 4 =
-15 + 5 =	-15 - 5 =	$-15 \times 5 =$
		-

2 Integers

2.1 Which numbers are smaller than 0?

WHY PEOPLE DECIDED TO HAVE NEGATIVE NUMBERS

Numbers such as -7 and -500, the additive inverses of whole numbers, are included with all the whole numbers and called **integers**.

Fractions can be negative too, e.g. $-\frac{3}{4}$ and -3,46.

The natural numbers are used for counting, and fractions (rational numbers) are used for measuring. Why do we also have negative numbers?

When a larger number is subtracted from a smaller number, the answer may be a negative number: 5 - 12 = -7, and this number is called **negative 7**.

One of the most important reasons for inventing negative numbers was to provide solutions for equations like these:

Equation	Solution	Required property of negative numbers
17 + x = 10	x = -7 because 17 + (-7) = 17 - 7 = 10	1. Adding a negative number is just like subtracting the corresponding positive number
5 - x = 9	x = -4 because $5 - (-4) = 5 + 4 = 9$	2. Subtracting a negative number is just like adding the corresponding positive number
20 + 3x = 5	$x = -5 \text{ because}$ $3 \times (-5) = -15$	3. The product of a positive number and a negative number is a negative number

PROPERTIES OF INTEGERS

1.	In each case, state what number will make	e the equation true. Also state which of the
	properties of integers in the table above, i	s demonstrated by the equation.
	(a) $20 - x = 50$	(b) $50 + x = 20$

(c) 20 - 3x = 50 (d) 50 + 3x = 20

2.2 Adding and subtracting with integers

Addition and subtraction of negative numbers

Examples:
$$(-5) + (-3)$$
 and $(-20) - (-7)$

This is done in the same way as the addition and subtraction of positive numbers.

$$(-5) + (-3)$$
 can also be written
as $-5 + (-3)$ or as $-5 + -3$

$$(-5) + (-3) = -8$$
 and $-20 - (-7) = -13$

This is just like 5 + 3 = 8 and 20 - 7 = 13, or R5 + R3 = R8, and R20 - R7 = R13.

Subtraction of a larger number from a smaller number

Examples: 5 – 9 and 29 – 51

Let us first consider the following:

$$5 + (-5) = 0$$

$$10 + (-10) = 0$$

and

$$20 + (-20) = 0$$

If we subtract 5 from 5, we get 0, but then we still have to subtract 4:

$$5-9 = 5-5-4$$

= 0-4
= -4

We know that -9 = (-4) + (-5)

Suppose the numbers are larger, e.g. 29 – 51:

$$29 - 51 = 29 - 29 - 22$$

$$-51 = (-29) + (-22)$$

How much will be left of the 51, after you have subtracted 29 from 29 to get 0? How can we find out? Is it 51 – 29?

Addition of a positive and a negative number

Examples:
$$7 + (-5)$$
; $37 + (-45)$ and $(-13) + 45$

The following statement is true if the unknown number is 5:

$$20$$
 – (a certain number) = 15

We also need numbers that will make sentences like the following true:

$$20 + (a certain number) = 15$$

But to go from 20 to 15 you have to subtract 5.

The number we need to make the sentence 20 + (a certain number) = 15 true must have the following strange property:

If you **add** this number, it should have the **same effect** as **subtracting 5**.

So mathematicians agreed that the number called negative 5 will have the property that if you add it to another number, the effect will be the same as subtracting the natural number 5.

This means that mathematicians agreed that 20 + (-5) is equal to 20 - 5. In other words, instead of adding *negative 5* to a number, you may subtract 5.

Adding a negative number has the same effect as subtracting a corresponding natural number.

For example: 20 + (-15) = 20 - 15 = 5.

Subtraction of a negative number

We have dealt with cases like -20 - (-7) on the previous page.

The following statement:

25 + (a certain number) = 30

is true if the number is 5

We also need a number to make this statement true:

25 - (a certain number) = 30

If you subtract this number, it should have the same effect that adding 5.

It was agreed that 25 - (-5) is equal to 25 + 5

Instead of subtracting the negative number, you add the corresponding positive number (the additive inverse).

$$8 - (-3) = 8 + 3$$
$$= 11$$
$$-5 - (-12) = -5 + 12$$
$$= 7$$

We may say that for each "positive" number there is a **corresponding** or **opposite** negative number. Two positive and negative numbers that correspond, for example 3 and (-3), are called **additive inverses**.

Subtraction of a positive number from a negative number

For example: -7 - 4 actually means (-7) - 4.

Instead of subtracting a positive number, you add the corresponding negative number.

$$-7 - 4$$
 can be seen as $(-7) + (-4) = -11$

CALCULATIONS WITH INTEGERS

Calculate.

1.
$$-7 + 18$$

$$2. \quad 24 - 30 - 7$$

$$3. -15 + (-14) - 9$$

4.
$$35 - (-20)$$

6.
$$(-12) - (-17)$$

2.3 Multiplying and dividing with integers

MULTIPLICATION WITH INTEGERS

1. Calculate.

•••••

(c)
$$10 \times (-7)$$

(d)
$$7 \times (-10)$$

••••••

2. Say whether you agree (\checkmark) or (\Chi) disagree with each statement.

(a)
$$10 \times (-7) = 70$$

(b)
$$9 \times (-5) = (-9) \times 5$$

(c)
$$(-7) \times 10 = 7 \times (-10)$$

(d)
$$9 \times (-5) = -45$$

(e)
$$(-7) \times 10 = 10 \times (-7)$$

(f)
$$5 \times (-9) = 45$$

Multiplication of integers is commutative:

$$(-20) \times 5 = 5 \times (-20)$$

THE DISTRIBUTIVE PROPERTY

1. Calculate each of the following. Note that brackets are used for two purposes in these expressions: to indicate that certain operations are to be done first, and to show the integers.

(a)
$$20 + (-5)$$

(b)
$$4 \times (20 + (-5))$$

(c)
$$4 \times 20 + 4 \times (-5)$$

(d)
$$(-5) + (-20)$$

(e)
$$4 \times ((-5) + (-20))$$

(f)
$$4 \times (-5) + 4 \times (-20)$$

2. If you worked correctly, your answers for question 1 should be 15; 60; 60; -25; -100 and -100. If your answers are different, check to see where you went wrong and correct your work.

3. Calculate each of the following where you can.

(a)
$$20 + (-15)$$

(b)
$$4 \times (20 + (-15))$$

(c)
$$4 \times 20 + 4 \times (-15)$$

(d)
$$(-15) + (-20)$$

(e)
$$4 \times ((-15) + (-20))$$

(f)
$$4 \times (-15) + 4 \times (-20)$$

(g)
$$10 + (-5)$$

(h)
$$(-4) \times (10 + (-5))$$

(i)
$$(-4) \times 10 + ((-4) \times (-5))$$

•••••

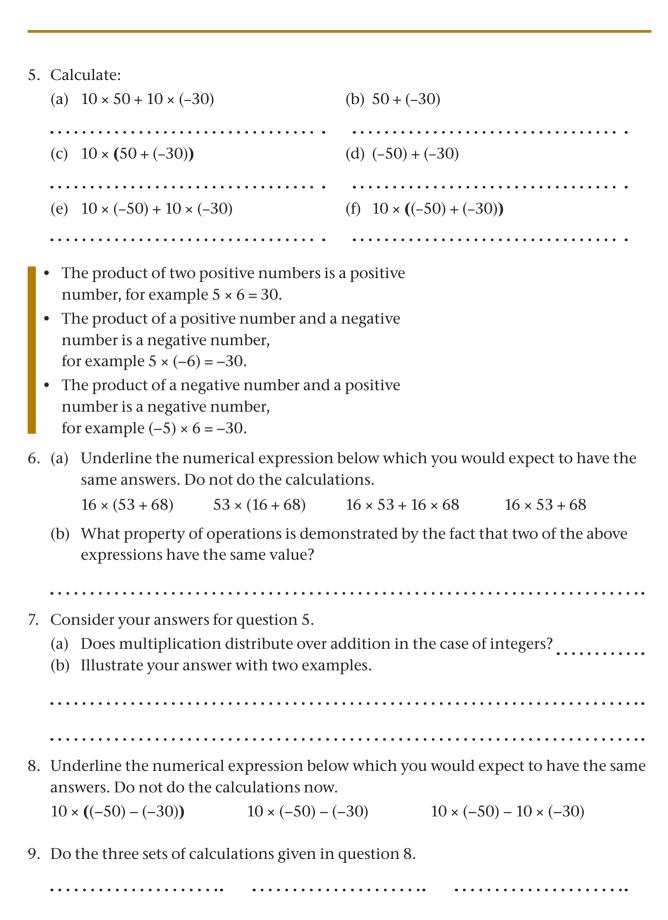
4. What property of integers is demonstrated in your answers for questions 3(a) and (g)? Explain your answer.

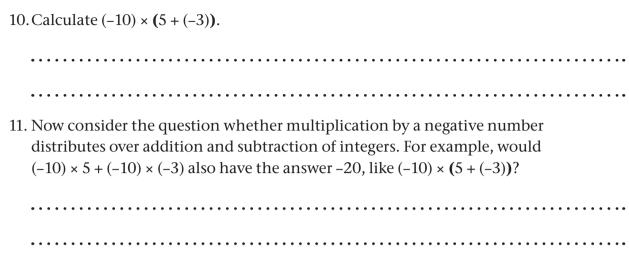
In question 3(i) you had to multiply two negative numbers. What was your guess? We can calculate $(-4) \times (10 + (-5))$ as in (h). It is $(-4) \times 5 = -20$

If we want the distributive property to be true for integers, then $(-4) \times 10 + (-4) \times (-5)$ must be equal to -20.

$$(-4) \times 10 + (-4) \times (-5) = -40 + (-4) \times (-5)$$

Then $(-4) \times (-5)$ must be equal to 20.





To make sure that multiplication distributes over addition and subtraction in the system of integers, we have to agree that

(a negative number) × (a negative number) is a positive number, for example $(-10) \times (-3) = 30$.

12. Calculate each of the following.

(a)
$$(-20) \times (-6)$$

(b)
$$(-20) \times 7$$

(c) $(-30) \times (-10) + (-30) \times (-8)$

(d)
$$(-30) \times ((-10) + (-8))$$

(e) $(-30) \times (-10) - (-30) \times (-8)$

(f)
$$(-30) \times ((-10) - (-8))$$

.....

Here is a summary of the properties of integers that make it possible to do calculations with integers:

- When a number is added to its additive inverse, the result is 0. For example, (+12) + (-12) = 0.
- Adding an integer has the same effect as subtracting its additive inverse. For example, 3 + (-10) can be calculated by doing 3 10, and the answer is -7.
- Subtracting an integer has the same effect as adding its additive inverse. For example, 3 (-10) can be calculated by calculating 3 + 10 is 13.
- The product of a positive and a negative integer is negative. For example, $(-15) \times 6 = -90$.
- The product of a negative and a negative integer is positive. For example $(-15) \times (-6) = 90$.

DIVISION WITH INTEGERS

1. Calculate

(a)
$$5 \times (-7)$$

(b)
$$(-3) \times 20$$

(c)
$$(-5) \times (-10)$$

(c)
$$(-5) \times (-10)$$

(d)
$$(-3) \times (-20)$$

2. Use your answers in question 1 to determine the following:

(a)
$$(-35) \div 5$$

(b)
$$(-35) \div (-7)$$

(c)
$$(-60) \div 20$$

(d)
$$(-60) \div (-3)$$

(e)
$$50 \div (-5)$$

(f)
$$50 \div (-10)$$

(g)
$$60 \div (-20)$$

(h)
$$60 \div (-3)$$

• The quotient of a positive number and a negative

number is a negative number.

The quotient of two negative numbers is a positive number.

MIXED CALCULATIONS WITH INTEGERS

1. Calculate.

(a)
$$20(-50+7)$$

(b)
$$20 \times (-50) + 20 \times 7$$

(c) 20(-50+-7)

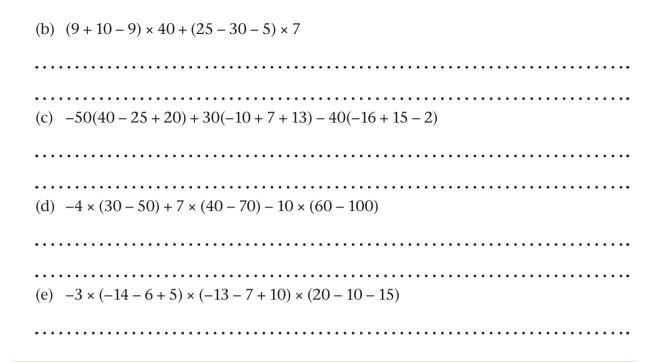
(d)
$$20 \times (-50) + 20 \times -7$$

(e) -20(-50+-7)

(f)
$$-20 \times -50 + -20 \times -7$$

2. Calculate.

(a)
$$40 \times (-12 + 8) - 10 \times (2 + -8) - 3 \times (-3 - 8)$$



2.4 Powers, roots and word problems

Answer all questions in this section without using a calculator.

1. Complete the tables.

(a)	х	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	χ^2												
	χ^3												

(b)	х	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9	-10	-11	-12
	χ^2												
	χ^3												

 3^2 is 9 and $(-3)^2$ is also 9.

 3^3 is 27 and $(-5)^3$ is -125.

Both (-3) and 3 are **square roots** of 9

3 may be called the **positive square root** of 9, and

(-3) may be called the **negative square root** of 9.

3 is called the **cube root** of 27, because $3^3 = 27$.

-5 is called the cube root of -125 because $(-5)^3 = -125$.

 10^2 is 100 and $(-10)^2$ is also 100.

Both 10 and (-10) are called **square roots** of 100.

The symbol $\sqrt{}$ means that you must take the **positive square root** of the number.

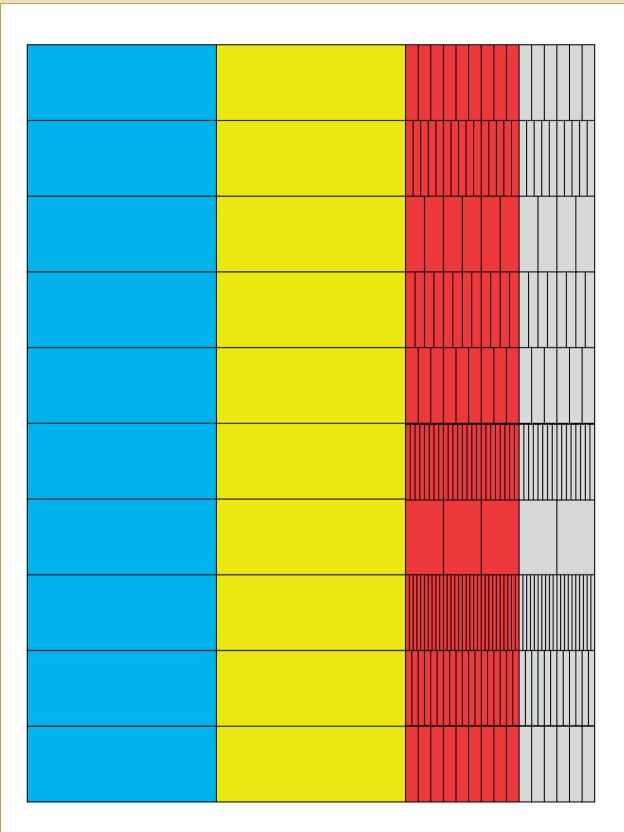
2.	Calculate the following: (a) $\sqrt{4} - \sqrt{9}$	(b) $\sqrt[3]{27} + (-\sqrt[3]{64})$					
	••••••••	••••••					
	(c) $-(3^2)$	(d) $(-3)^2$					
	(e) $4^2 - 6^2 + 1^2$	(f) $3^3 - 4^3 - 2^3 - 1^3$					
	•••••	•••••					
	(g) $\sqrt{81} - \sqrt{4} \times \sqrt[3]{125}$	(h) $-(4^2)(-1)^2$					
	•••••	•••••					
	•••••	•••••					
	(i) $\frac{(-5)^2}{\sqrt{37-12}}$	(j) $\frac{-\sqrt{36}}{-1^3-2^3}$					
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	••••••					
	•••••	•••••					
3.	Determine the answer to each of the follow	· ·					
	(a) The overnight temperature in Polokwane drops from 11 °C to −2 °C. By how many degrees has the temperature dropped?						
	(b) The temperature in Estcourt drops from 2 °C to −1 °C in one hour, and then another two degrees in the next hour. How many degrees in total did the temperature drop over the two hours?						
	(c) A submarine is 75 m below the surface below the surface is it now?	ce of the sea. It then rises by 21 m. How far					
	(d) A submarine is 37 m below the surface	te of the sea. It then sinks a further 15 m.					

How far below the surface is it now?

CHAPTER 3 Fractions

This chapter is mainly revision of the work on fractions that you have done in previous grades. It is being repeated because it is vital that you are confident working with fractions. Ensure that you complete all your solutions to questions **without using a calculator**, and that you show all steps of your working.

3.1	Equivalent fractions	41
3.2	Adding and subtracting fractions	45
3.3	Multiplying and dividing fractions	48
3.4	Equivalent forms	55



What part of the block is coloured?

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 40 2014/07/03 10:58:37 AM

3 Fractions

Equivalent fractions 3.1

THE SAME NUMBER IN DIFFERENT FORMS

1. How much money is each of the following amounts? (a) $\frac{1}{5}$ of R200 (b) $\frac{2}{10}$ of R200 (c) $\frac{4}{20}$ of R200

(a)
$$\frac{1}{5}$$
 of R200

(b)
$$\frac{2}{10}$$
 of R200

(c)
$$\frac{4}{20}$$
 of R200

Did you notice that all the answers are the same? That is because $\frac{1}{5}$, $\frac{2}{10}$ and $\frac{4}{20}$ are **equivalent fractions**. They are different ways of writing the same number.

Consider this bar. It is divided into five equal parts.



Each piece is **one fifth** of the whole bar.

2. Draw lines on the bar below so that it is approximately divided into ten equal parts.



(a) What part of the whole bar is each of your ten parts?

(b) How many tenths is the same as one fifth?

(c) How many tenths is the same as two fifths?

(d) How many fifths is the same as eight tenths?

3. Draw lines on the bar below so that it is approximately divided into 25 equal parts.



(a) How many twenty-fifths is the same as two fifths?

(b) How many fifths is the same as 20 twenty-fifths?

In question 3(b) you found that $\frac{4}{5}$ is equivalent to $\frac{20}{25}$: these are just two different ways to describe the same part of the bar.

This can be expressed by writing $\frac{4}{5} = \frac{20}{25}$ which means that $\frac{4}{5}$ and $\frac{20}{25}$ are equivalent to each other.

4.	Write down all the other pairs of equivalent fractions which you found while doing questions 2 and 3.						
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •						
Th	e yellow bar is divided	into fifths					
111	e yellow bal is divided	. IIIto IIItiis	•				
5.	(a) Into what kind of	f fraction p	arts is the l	olue bar div	vided?		
	(b) Into what kind of						
	(c) If you want to ma						
	many parts do yo	•					
(d) If you want to mark the yellow bar in fortieths like the red bar, into how maparts do you have to divide each of the fifths?					v many		
	(e) If you want to ma have to divide each	ark the yell	ow bar in <i>e</i>	<i>ightieths</i> , in	ito how ma	ny parts do	o you
	(f) If you want to ma to divide each of	ark the blue	e bar in <i>eigl</i>	<i>itieths</i> , into	how many	y parts do y	ou have
_							• • • • • • •
6.	Suppose this bar is div	vided into	4 equal par	ts, in other	words, qua	arters.	
	(a) If the bar is also d will there be in ea				•		parts
	(b) If each quarter is						will each
	small part be?				_		
7. Complete this table of equivalent fractions, as All the fractions in each column must be equiv				, as far as y			umbers.
	sixteenths	8	4	2	10	14	12
	eighths						
	quarters						
	twelfths						
	twentieths						

42 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 1

Equivalent fractions can be formed by multiplying the numerator and denominator by the same number. For example $\frac{1}{5} = \frac{4 \times 1}{4 \times 5} = \frac{4}{20}$

8. Write down five different fractions that are equivalent to $\frac{3}{4}$.

••••••

9. Express each of the following numbers as twelfths:

(a) $\frac{2}{3}$

(b) $\frac{3}{4}$

(c) $\frac{5}{6}$

(d) $\frac{1}{6}$

••••••

You may divide the numerator and denominator by the same number, instead of multiplying the numerator and denominator by the same number. This gives you a simpler fraction.

The **simplest form** of a fraction has no common factors. For example, you find the simplest form of the fraction $\frac{4}{12}$ is $\frac{1}{3}$ by dividing both the numerator and denominator by the common factor of 4.

10. Convert each of the following fractions to their simplest form:

(a) $\frac{40}{100}$

(b) $\frac{4}{16}$

(c) $\frac{5}{25}$

(d) $\frac{6}{30}$

(e) $\frac{6}{24}$

(f) $\frac{8}{88}$

CONVERTING BETWEEN MIXED NUMBERS AND FRACTIONS

Numbers that have both whole number and fraction parts are called **mixed numbers**.

Examples of mixed numbers:
$$3\frac{4}{5}$$
, $2\frac{7}{8}$, and $8\frac{3}{10}$

Mixed numbers can be written in expanded notation, for example:

$$3\frac{4}{5}$$
 means $3 + \frac{4}{5}$

$$2\frac{7}{8}$$
 means $2 + \frac{7}{8}$

$$2\frac{7}{8}$$
 means $2 + \frac{7}{8}$ $8\frac{3}{10}$ means $8 + \frac{3}{10}$.

To add and subtract mixed numbers, you can work with the whole number parts and the fraction parts separately, for example:

$$3\frac{4}{5} + 13\frac{3}{5}$$

$$13\frac{3}{5} - 3\frac{4}{5}$$

$$3\frac{4}{5} + 13\frac{3}{5}$$

$$= 16\frac{7}{5}$$

$$= 12\frac{8}{5} - 3\frac{4}{5}$$
 (we need to "borrow" a unit from 13, because we cannot subtract $\frac{4}{5}$ from $\frac{3}{5}$)

$$=17\frac{2}{5}$$

$$=9\frac{4}{5}$$

However, this method can be difficult to do with some examples – and it does not work with multiplication and division.

An alternative and preferred method is to convert the mixed number to an **improper fraction**, as shown in the example below:

$$3\frac{4}{5}$$

$$= 3 + \frac{4}{5}$$

$$= \frac{15}{5} + \frac{4}{5}$$

$$= \frac{19}{5}$$

You can obtain the numerator of 19 in one step by multiplying the denominator (5) by the whole number (3), and then adding the numerator (4).

So you can calculate $3\frac{4}{5} + 13\frac{3}{5}$ using this method:

$$3\frac{4}{5} + 13\frac{3}{5}$$

$$= \frac{19}{5} + \frac{68}{5}$$

$$= \frac{87}{5}$$

The answer must be converted to a mixed number again:
$$\frac{87}{5} = 17\frac{2}{5}$$

1. Convert each of the following mixed numbers to improper fractions:

(a)
$$5\frac{3}{5}$$

(b)
$$2\frac{3}{8}$$

.....

(c)
$$3\frac{4}{7}$$

(d)
$$4\frac{5}{12}$$

.....

2. Convert each of the following improper fractions to mixed numbers:

(a)
$$\frac{32}{5}$$

(b)
$$\frac{25}{8}$$

24 37

(c)
$$\frac{24}{9}$$

(d)
$$\frac{37}{20}$$

••••••

3.2 Adding and subtracting fractions

To add or subtract two fractions, they have to be expressed with the *same* denominators first. To achieve that, one or more of the given fractions may have to be replaced with equivalent fractions.

$$\frac{3}{20} + \frac{2}{5}$$

$$= \frac{3}{20} + \frac{2 \times 4}{5 \times 4} \text{ to get twentieths.}$$

$$= \frac{5 \times 20}{12 \times 20} + \frac{7 \times 12}{20 \times 12}$$

$$= \frac{3}{20} + \frac{8}{20}$$

$$= \frac{11}{20}$$

$$= \frac{11}{20}$$

$$= \frac{184}{240}$$

$$= \frac{23}{30}$$

We will later refer to this method of adding or subtracting fractions as Method A.

In the case of $\frac{5}{12} + \frac{7}{20}$, multiplying by 20 and by 12 was a sure way of making equivalent fractions of the same kind, in this case two-hundred-and-fortieths. However, the numbers became quite big. Just imagine how big the numbers will become if you use the same method to calculate $\frac{17}{75} + \frac{13}{85}$!

Fortunately, there is a method of keeping the numbers smaller (in many cases), when making equivalent fractions so that fractions can be added or subtracted. In this method you first calculate the **lowest common multiple** or LCM of the denominators. In the case of $\frac{5}{12} + \frac{7}{20}$, the smaller multiples of the denominators are:

12: 12 24 36 48 60 72 84 20: 20 40 60 80 100 120 140

The smallest number that is a multiple of both 12 and 20 is 60.

Both $\frac{5}{12}$ and $\frac{7}{20}$ can be expressed in terms of sixtieths:

 $\frac{5}{12} = \frac{5 \times 5}{12 \times 5} = \frac{25}{60}$ because to make twelfths into sixtieths you have to divide each twelfth into 5 equal parts, to get $12 \times 5 = 60$ equal parts, i.e. sixtieths.

Similarly, $\frac{7}{20} = \frac{7 \times 3}{20 \times 3} = \frac{21}{60}$.

Hence $\frac{5}{12} + \frac{7}{20} = \frac{25}{60} + \frac{21}{60} = \frac{46}{60} = \frac{23}{30}$

This method may be called the LCM method of adding or subtracting fractions.

ADDING AND SUBTRACTING FRACTIONS

1. Which method of adding and subtracting fractions do you think will be the easiest and quickest for you, Method A or the LCM method? Explain.

••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

2. Calculate:

(a)
$$\frac{3}{8} + \frac{2}{5}$$

(b)
$$\frac{3}{10} + \frac{7}{8}$$

.....

(c) $3\frac{2}{5} + 2\frac{3}{10}$

(d)
$$7\frac{3}{8} + 3\frac{11}{12}$$

3. Calculate each of the following:

(a)
$$\frac{13}{20} - \frac{2}{5}$$

(b)
$$\frac{7}{12} - \frac{1}{4}$$

.....

(c)
$$5\frac{1}{2} - 3\frac{3}{8}$$

(d)
$$4\frac{1}{9} - 5\frac{2}{3}$$

••••••

4. Paulo and Sergio buy a pizza. Paulo eats $\frac{1}{3}$ of the pizza and Sergio eats two fifths. How much of the pizza is left over?

.....

•••••

5. Calculate each of the following. State whether you use Method A or the LCM method.

(a)
$$\frac{7}{15} + \frac{11}{24}$$

(b)
$$\frac{73}{100} - \frac{7}{75}$$

•••••••

(c)
$$\frac{3}{25} + \frac{13}{40}$$

(d)
$$\frac{9}{16} - \frac{3}{10}$$

.....

(e)
$$\frac{1}{18} + \frac{7}{20}$$

(f)
$$\frac{11}{35} - \frac{3}{14}$$

••••••••••••••••••••••••

.....

(g)
$$\frac{5}{8} + \frac{5}{8} + \frac{5}{8}$$

••••••

•••••

3.3 Multiplying and dividing fractions

THINK ABOUT MULTIPLICATION AND DIVISION WITH FRACTIONS

1.	Read the questions below, but do not answer them now. Just describe in each case what calculations you think must be done to find the answer to the question. You can think later about how the calculations may be done.	
	(a) 10 people come to a party, and each of them must get $\frac{5}{8}$ of a pizza. How many pizzas must be bought to provide for all of them?	
	(b) $\frac{5}{8}$ of the cost of a new clinic must be carried by the 10 doctors who will work there. What part of the cost of the clinic must be carried by each of the doctors if they have agreed to share the cost equally?	5,
	(c) If a whole pizza costs R10, how much does $\frac{5}{8}$ of a pizza cost?	
	(d) The owner of a spaza shop has 10 whole pizzas. How many portions of $\frac{5}{8}$ of a pizza each can he make up from the 10 pizzas?	
2.	Look at the different sets of calculations shown on the next page. (a) Which set of calculations is a correct way to find the answer for question 1(a)?	
	(b) Which set of calculations is a correct way to find the answer for question 1(b)?	
	(c) Which set of calculations is a correct way to find the answer for question 1(c)?	•••
		• • •
	(d) Which set of calculations is a correct way to find the answer for question 1(d)?	

48 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 1

Set A:
$$\frac{10}{10} \times \frac{5}{8} = \frac{50}{80}$$

Set B:
$$\frac{5}{8} = \frac{50}{80}$$
. 50 eightieths ÷ $10 = \frac{5}{80}$

Set C: How many eighths in 10 wholes? 80 eighths. How many 5-eighths in 80? $80 \div 5 = 16$

Set D:
$$\frac{5}{8}$$
 is 5 eighths. 10×5 eighths = $\frac{50}{8}$ **Set E:** $\frac{5}{8} \div 10 = \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{10}{1} = \frac{50}{8}$

Set E:
$$\frac{5}{8} \div 10 = \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{10}{1} = \frac{50}{8}$$

Multiply a fraction by a whole number

Example:

$$8 \times \frac{3}{5} = 8 \times 3$$
 fifths = 24 fifths = $\frac{24}{5} = 4\frac{4}{5}$

Divide a fraction by a whole number

You can divide a fraction by converting it to an equivalent fraction with a numerator that is a multiple of the divisor.

Example:

$$\frac{2}{3} \div 5 = \frac{10}{15} \div 5 = 10$$
 fifteenths $\div 5 = 2$ fifteenths $= \frac{2}{15}$

A fraction of a whole number, and a fraction of a fraction

Examples:

A
$$\frac{7}{12}$$
 of R36.

$$\frac{1}{12}$$
 of R36 is the same as R36 ÷ 12 = R3, so $\frac{7}{12}$ of R36 is 7 × R3 = R21

B
$$\frac{7}{12}$$
 of 36 fiftieths.

$$\frac{1}{12}$$
 of 36 fiftieths is the same as 36 fiftieths ÷ 12 = 3 fiftieths,

so
$$\frac{7}{12}$$
 of 36 fiftieths is 7×3 fiftieths = 21 fiftieths.

$$\frac{7}{12} \times \frac{36}{50}$$
 means $\frac{7}{12}$ of $\frac{36}{50}$, it is the same.

$$\frac{1}{12}$$
 of $\frac{36}{50}$ is the same as $\frac{36}{50} \div 12 = \frac{3}{50}$, so $\frac{7}{12}$ of $\frac{36}{50}$ is $7 \times \frac{3}{50} = \frac{21}{50}$.

3. (a) You calculated $\frac{7}{12} \times \frac{36}{50}$ in the example above. What was the answer?

•••••

(b) Calculate $\frac{7 \times 36}{12 \times 50}$, and simplify your answer.

.....

Example:

$$\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{5}{8} = \frac{2}{3}$$
 of $\frac{15}{24} = \frac{1}{3}$ of $\frac{30}{24} = \frac{10}{24} = \frac{5}{12}$

The same answer is obtained by calculating $\frac{2 \times 5}{3 \times 8}$

To multiply two fractions, you may simply multiply the numerators and the denominators.

$$\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{9}{20} = \frac{2 \times 9}{3 \times 20} = \frac{18}{60} = \frac{3}{10}$$

Division by a fraction

When we divide by a fraction, we have a very different situation. Think about this:

If you have 40 pizzas, how many learners can have $\frac{3}{5}$ a pizza each?

To find the number of fifths in 40 pizzas: $40 \times 5 = 200$ fifths of a pizza.

To find the number of 3-fifths: $200 \div 3 = 66$ portions of $\frac{3}{5}$ pizza and 2 fifths of a pizza left over.

Since the portion for each learner is 3 fifths, the 2 fifths of a pizza that remains is 2 thirds of a portion.

So, to calculate $40 \div \frac{3}{5}$, we multiplied by **5** and divided by **3**, and that gave us 66 and 2 thirds of a portion.

In fact, we calculated $40 \times \frac{5}{3}$.

Division is the inverse of multiplication.

So, to divide by a fraction, you multiply by its inverse.

Example:

$$\frac{18}{60} \div \frac{2}{3} = \frac{18}{60} \times \frac{3}{2} = \frac{54}{120} = \frac{9}{20}$$

MULTIPLYING AND DIVIDING FRACTIONS

1. Calculate each of the following:

(a)
$$\frac{3}{4}$$
 of $\frac{12}{25}$

(b)
$$\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{12}{100}$$

(c) $\frac{3}{4}$ of $\frac{13}{25}$

(d)
$$\frac{3}{4} \times 1\frac{1}{2}$$

(e) $\frac{3}{20} \times \frac{5}{6}$

(f)
$$\frac{3}{20}$$
 of $\frac{3}{20}$

2. A small factory manufactures copper pans for cooking. Exactly $\frac{3}{50}$ kg of copper is needed to make one pan.

(a) How many pans can they make if $\frac{18}{50}$ kg of copper is available?

(b) How many pans can they make if $\frac{20}{50}$ kg of copper is available?

(c) How many pans can they make if $\frac{2}{5}$ kg of copper is available?

(d) How many pans can they make if $\frac{3}{4}$ kg of copper is available?

144

(e) How many pans can be made if $\frac{144}{50}$ kg of copper is available?

•••••

(f) How many pans can be made if 5 kg of copper is available?

•••••

3.	Calculate: (a) $\frac{18}{50} \div \frac{3}{50}$	(b) $\frac{9}{25} \div \frac{3}{50}$
	(c) $\frac{144}{50} \div \frac{3}{50}$	(d) $2\frac{44}{50} \div \frac{3}{50}$
	(e) $2\frac{22}{25} \div \frac{3}{50}$	(f) $\frac{5}{8} \div \frac{3}{50}$
	(g) $20 \div \frac{3}{50}$	(h) $2 \div \frac{3}{50}$
	(i) $1 \div \frac{3}{50}$	(j) $\frac{1}{2} \div \frac{3}{50}$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
4.	A rectangle is $3\frac{5}{8}$ cm long and $2\frac{3}{5}$ cm wice	de.
	(a) What is the area of this rectangle?	
	•••••	
	(b) What is the perimeter of this rectang	le?
5.	A rectangle is $5\frac{5}{6}$ cm long and its area is 8 How wide is this rectangle?	

6.	Calculate.	
	(a) $2\frac{3}{8}$ of $5\frac{4}{5}$	(b) $3\frac{2}{7} \times 2\frac{7}{12}$
	(c) $8\frac{2}{5} \div 3\frac{3}{10}$	(d) $3\frac{3}{10} \times 3\frac{3}{10}$
	(e) $2\frac{5}{8} \div 5\frac{7}{10}$	(f) $\frac{3}{5} \times 1\frac{2}{3} \times 1\frac{3}{4}$
7.	Calculate:	••••••
1.	(a) $\frac{2}{3}(\frac{3}{4} + \frac{7}{10})$	(b) $\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{3}{4} + \frac{2}{3} \times \frac{7}{10}$
	(a) $\frac{3}{3}(\frac{4}{4} + \frac{10}{10})$	$(0) \frac{1}{3} \wedge \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{3} \wedge \frac{1}{10}$
	•••••	••••••
	(c) $\frac{5}{8}(\frac{4}{5} - \frac{1}{3})$	(d) $\frac{5}{8} \times \frac{4}{5} - \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{1}{3}$
8.	A piece of land with an area of 40 ha is div the land is R45 000. Remember that "ha"	vided into 30 equal plots. The total price of is the abbreviation for hectares.
	(a) Jim buys $\frac{2}{5}$ of the land.	
	(i) How many plots is this and how i	much should he pay?
	•••••	
	(ii) What is the area of the land that	Jim buys?

(b) Charlene buys $\frac{1}{3}$ of the land. How many plots is this and how much should she pay?

(c) Bongani buys the rest of the land. Determine the fraction of the land that he buys.

SQUARES, CUBES, SQUARE ROOTS AND CUBE ROOTS

1. Calculate:

(a)
$$\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{3}{4}$$

(b)
$$\frac{7}{10} \times \frac{7}{10}$$

(c)
$$2\frac{5}{8} \times 2\frac{5}{8}$$

(d)
$$1\frac{5}{12} \times 1\frac{5}{12}$$

(e)
$$3\frac{5}{7} \times 3\frac{5}{7}$$

(f)
$$10\frac{3}{4} \times 10\frac{3}{4}$$

 $\frac{9}{16}$ is the square of $\frac{3}{4}$, because $\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{3}{4} = \frac{9}{16}$. $\frac{3}{4}$ is the square root of $\frac{9}{16}$.

2. Find the square root of each of the following numbers.

(a)
$$\sqrt{\frac{25}{49}}$$

(b)
$$\sqrt{\frac{36}{121}}$$

(c)
$$\sqrt{\frac{64}{25}}$$

(d)
$$\sqrt{2\frac{46}{49}}$$

3. Calculate.

(a)
$$\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{3}{4}$$

(b)
$$\frac{7}{10} \times \frac{7}{10} \times \frac{7}{10}$$

(c)
$$\frac{9}{10} \times \frac{9}{10} \times \frac{9}{10}$$

(d)
$$\frac{5}{8} \times \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{5}{8}$$

4.	Find the cube root of each of the following	ng numbers.
	(a) $\sqrt[3]{\frac{27}{1000}}$	(b) $\sqrt[3]{\frac{125}{216}}$
	(c) $\sqrt[3]{\frac{1000}{216}}$	(d) $\sqrt[3]{15\frac{5}{8}}$

3.4 Equivalent forms

FRACTIONS, DECIMALS AND PERCENTAGE FORMS

1. The rectangle on the right is divided into small parts.

- (a) How many of these small parts are there in the rectangle?
- (b) How many of these small parts are there in one tenth of the rectangle?

(c) What fraction of the rectangle is blue?

-
- (d) What fraction of the rectangle is pink?

Instead of "6 hundredths" we may say "6 per cent" or, in short, "6%". It means the same thing.

15 per cent of the rectangle on the right is blue.

- 2. (a) What percentage of the rectangle is green?
 - (b) What percentage of the rectangle is pink?

0,37 and 37% and $\frac{37}{100}$ are different ways of writing the same value (**37 hundredths**).

3.	Express each of the following in three ways: as a decimal; a percentage and a fraction
	(in simplest form):

(a)	3 tenths
-----	----------

(b) 7 hundredths

(c)	37 hundred	lthe

(d) 7 tenths

_	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
(e)		2	f	î	ft	ŀ	ıs	

(f) 7 twentieths

4. Fill in the missing values in the table:

Decimal	Percentage	Common fraction (simplest form)
0,2		
	40%	
		$\frac{3}{8}$
0,05		

5.	(a)	Jannie eats a quarter of a watermelon. What percentage of the watermelon
		is this?

• • • •	• • • • •	 	• • • • •	• • • • • •	 • • • • •	 • • • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • •

(b)	Sibu drinks 75% of the milk in a bottle. What fraction of the milk in the bottle
	has he drunk?

• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
(c)	Jem used 0,18 of the	paint in a tin. If he uses half of the remaining amount the	

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

next time he paints, what fraction (in simplest form) is left over?

CHAPTER 4 The decimal notation for fractions

In this chapter you will do more work with fractions written in the decimal notation. When fractions are written in the decimal notation, calculations can be done in the same way than for whole numbers. It is important to always keep in mind that the common fraction form, the decimal form and the percentage form are just different ways to represent exactly the same numbers. These numbers are called the rational numbers.

4.1	Equivalent forms	59
4.2	Calculations with decimals	61
4.3	Solving problems	64
4.4	More problems	66
4 5	Decimals in algebraic expressions	68

4 The decimal notation for fractions

4.1 Equivalent forms

Decimal fractions and common fractions are simply different ways of expressing the same number. They are different **notations** showing the same value.

To write a decimal fraction as a common fraction:

Write the decimal with a denominator that is a power of ten (10, 100, 1 000, etc.) and then simplify it if possible.

e.g.
$$0.35 = \frac{35}{100} = \frac{7}{20} \times \frac{5}{5} = \frac{7}{20}$$

To write a common fraction as a decimal fraction:

Change the common fraction to an equivalent fraction with a power of ten as a denominator.

e.g.
$$\frac{3}{4} = \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{25}{25} = \frac{75}{100} = 0.75$$

If you are permitted to use your calculator, simply type in $3 \div 4$ and the answer will be given as 0,75. On some calculators you will need to press an additional button to convert the exact fraction to a decimal.

Notation means a set of symbols to show a special thing.

COMMON FRACTIONS, DECIMAL FRACTIONS AND PERCENTAGES

You are not permitted to use a calculator in this exercise.

1. Write the following decimal fractions as common fractions in their simplest form:

(a) 0,56

(b) 3,87

(c) 1,9

(d) 5,205

2.	. Write the following common fractions as decimal fractions:					
	(a) $\frac{9}{20}$	(b) $\frac{7}{5}$				
	(c) $\frac{24}{25}$	(d) $2\frac{3}{8}$	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
		•••••				
3.	Write the following percent					
	(a) 70%	(b) 5%	(c) 12,5%			
	•••••		••••			
4.	Write the following decima	l fractions as percentag	ges:			
	(a) 0,6	(b) 0,43	(c) 0,08			
	(d) 0,265	(e) 0,005	••••			
	(a) 0,200	(c) 0,000				
	•••••	•••••	• • • •			
5.	Write the following commo		nges:			
	(a) $\frac{7}{10}$	(b) $\frac{3}{4}$	(c) $\frac{33}{50}$			
	(d) 60	(a) 2	29			
	(d) $\frac{60}{60}$	(e) $\frac{2}{25}$	(f) $\frac{29}{50}$			
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
6.	Jane and Devi are in differen	nt schools. At Jane's scl	hool the year mark for Mathematics			
	was out of 80, and Jane got		school the year mark was out of 50			
	and Devi got 40 out of 50.	tal marks in simplost f	orm did Davi obtain at har			
	(a) What fraction of the to school?	tai maiks, m simpiest i	offit, and Devi Obtain at Hef			
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				

	(b) What percentage did Devi and Jane get for Mathematics?
	(c) Who performed better, Jane or Devi?
	••••••
7.	During a basketball game, Lebo tried to score twelve times. Only four of her attempts were successful.
	(a) What fraction of her attempts was successful?
	(b) What percentage of her attempts was not successful?
	••••••

4.2 Calculations with decimals

When you **add** and **subtract** decimal fractions:

Add tenths to tenths.

Subtract tenths from tenths.

Add hundredths to hundredths.

Subtract hundreds from hundredths.

And so on!

When you **multiply** decimal fractions, you change the decimals to whole numbers, do the calculation and last, change them back to decimal fractions.

For example: To calculate $13,1 \times 1,01$, you first calculate 131×101 (which equals 13 231). Then, since you have multiplied the 13,1 by 10, and the 1,01 by 100 in order to turn them into whole numbers, you need to divide this answer by 10×100 (i.e. 1 000). Thus, the final answer is 13,231

CHAPTER 4: THE DECIMAL NOTATION FOR FRACTIONS

When you **divide** decimal fractions, you can use equivalent fractions to help you.

For example:
$$21.7 \div 0.7 = \frac{21.7}{0.7} = \frac{21.7}{0.7} \times \frac{10}{10} = \frac{217}{7} = 31$$

Notice how you multiply both the numerator and denominator of the fraction by the same number (in this case, 10). Always multiply by the *smallest* power of ten that will convert both values to whole numbers.

CALCULATIONS WITH DECIMALS

You are not permitted to use a calculator in this exercise. Ensure that you show all steps of your working.

1. Calculate the value of the following:

(a)
$$3,3+4,83$$

(b)
$$0.6 + 18.3 + 4.4$$

(c)
$$9,3 + 7,6 - 1,23$$

.....

••••••

(e)
$$9,43 - (3,61 + 1,14)$$
 (f) $1,21 + 2,5 - (2,3 - 0,23)$

2. Calculate the value of the following:

(a)
$$4 \times 0.5$$

(b)
$$15 \times 0.02$$

(c)
$$0.8 \times 0.04$$

(e)
$$1,07 \times 0,2$$

(f)
$$0,016 \times 0,02$$

3. Calculate the value of the following:

(a) $7,2 \div 3$

(b) $12 \div 0.3$

(c) $0,15 \div 0,5$

(d) $10 \div 0.002$

(e) $0.3 \div 0.006$

(f) $0.024 \div 0.08$

••••••

•••••

4. Circle the value that is equal to or closest to the answer to each calculation:

(a) 3×0.5

(b) $4,4 \div 0,2$

A: 6

A: 8,8

B: 1,5

B: 2,2

C: 0,15

C: 22

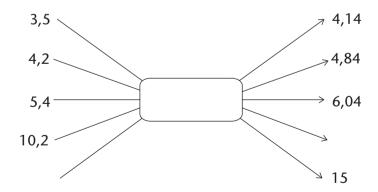
(c) $56 \times 1,675$

A: more than 56

B: more than 84

C: more than 112

5. Determine the operator and the unknown numbers in the following diagram, and fill them in:

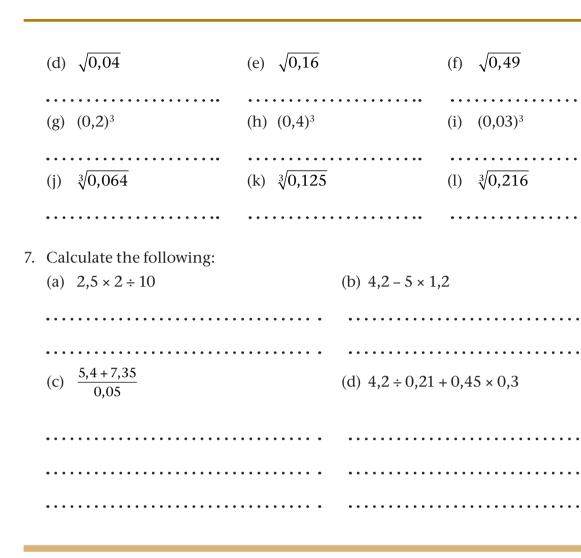


6. Calculate the following:

(a) $(0,1)^2$

(b) $(0,03)^2$

(c) $(2,5)^2$



4.3 Solving problems

ALL KINDS OF PROBLEMS

You are not permitted to use a calculator in this exercise. Ensure that you show all steps of working.

1. Is $6,54 \times 0,81 = 0,654 \times 8,1$? Explain your answer.

••••••

•••••

- 2. You are given that $45 \times 24 = 1080$. Use this result to determine:
 - (a) $4,5 \times 2,4$
- (b) 4.5×24
- (c) 4.5×0.24

	(d)	$0,045 \times 24$	(e)	0,045 × 0),024	(f)	$0,045 \times 24$
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • •	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
3.		thout actually dividing, or closest to the correct ans			answer in brac	kets	is the correct answer,
	(a)	14 ÷ 0,5 (7; 28; 70)			(b) $0,58 \div 0,7$	(8;	80; 0,8)
	(c)	2,1 ÷ 0,023 (10; 100;		•••••	••••••	• • • •	
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •	• • • • •			
4.	(a)	John is asked to calculate Step 1: $6.5 \div 2 = 3.25$ Step 2: $3.25 \times 100 = 32$ Is he correct? Why?	25	5 ÷ 0,02. I	He does the foll	owir	ng:
	• • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •	•••••
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
	(b)	Use John's method in p (i) $4.8 \div 0.3$					
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • •	• • • • • • • • • •	• • •	
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •	• • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
5.		ren: $0,174 \div 0,3 = 0,58$. Us hout doing any further c	_		write down the	ansv	wers for the following
		0,3 × 0,58	C U	234101101	(b) 1,74 ÷ 3		

(d) $174 \div 300$

(f) 0.3×5.8

or

(c) $17,4 \div 30$

(e) $0,0174 \div 0,03$

4.4 More problems

MORE PROBLEMS AND CALCULATIONS

You may use a calculator for this exercise.

1.	Calculate the following, rounding off all (a) 8,567 + 3,0456	answers correct to 2 decimal places: (b) 2,781 – 6,0049
	(c) 1,234 × 4,056	(d) $\frac{5,678 + 3,245}{1,294 - 0,994}$
		•••••
2.	What is the difference between 0,890 and	10,581?
3.	If a rectangle is 12,34 cm wide and 31,67 cm. (a) What is the perimeter of the rectangle.	
		und off your answer to two decimal places.
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
4.	Alison buys a cooldrink for R5,95, a choc R4,60. She pays with a R20 note. (a) How much did she spend?	olate for R3,25 and a packet of chips for
	•••••	
	•••••	•••••
	(b) How much change did she get?	•••••••
	•••••	

5.	A tractor uses 11,25 \ell of fuel in 0,75 hours. How many litres does it use in one hour?
6.	Mrs Ruka received her municipal bill.(a) Her water consumption charge for one month is R32,65. The first 5,326 kℓ are free, then she pays R5,83 per kilolitre for every kilolitre thereafter. How much water did the Ruka household use?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(b) The electricity charge for Mrs Ruka for the same month was R417,59. The first 10 kWh are free. For the next 100 kWh the charge is R1,13 per kWh, and thereafter for each kWh the charge is R1,42. How much electricity did the Ruka household use?
	•••••
	•••••
	•••••
7.	A roll of material is 25 m long. To make one dress, you need 1,35 m of material. How many dresses can be made out of a roll of material and how much material is left over?
	•••••
	•••••
	•••••
8.	If 1 litre of petrol weighs 0,679 kg, what will 28,6 ℓ of petrol weigh?
	•••••
9.	The reading on a water meter at the beginning of the month is 321,573 k ℓ . At the end of the month the reading is 332,523 k ℓ . How much water was used during this month, in ℓ ?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

4.5 Decimals in algebraic expressions and equations

DECIMALS IN ALGEBRA

1.	Simp	olify	the	follo	owin	g:

(a)
$$\sqrt{0.09x^{36}}$$

(b)
$$7,2x^3 - 10,4x^3$$

(c) $(2,4x^2y^3)(10y^3x)$

(d)
$$11,75x^2 - 1,2x \times 5x$$

(e) $\frac{3,4x-1,2x}{1,1x\times4}$

(f)
$$\sqrt[3]{0,008x^{12}} + \sqrt{0,16x^8}$$

(g) $3x^2 + 0.1x^2 - 45.6 + 3.9$

(h)
$$\frac{0.4y + 1.2y}{0.6x - 3x}$$

.....

2. Simplify the following:

(a)
$$\frac{0.5x^9}{0.02x^3}$$

(b)
$$\frac{0.325}{x^2} - \frac{1.675}{x^2}$$

(c)	3,6 <i>x</i>	~	5 <i>y</i>
(C)	$1,5y^{3}$	^	0,6x

(d)
$$\frac{9.5x^2}{1.2y^2} \div \frac{0.05x}{0.04y^8}$$

3. Solve the following equations:

(a)
$$0,24 + x = 0,31$$

(b)
$$x + 5.61 = 7.23$$

(c) x - 3,14 = 9,87 (d) 4,21 - x = 2,74

.....

.....

••••••

(e) 0.96x = 0.48 (f) $x \div 0.03 = 1.5$

.....

WORKSHEET

You are not permitted to use a calculator in this exercise, except for question 5. Ensure that you show all steps of working, where relevant.

1. Complete the following table:

Percentage	Common fraction	Decimal fraction
2,5%		
	15 250	
		0,009

2. Calculate the following:

(c)
$$7.2 \div 0.36$$

(d)
$$4.2 - 0.4 \times 1.2 + 7.37$$
 (e) $(0.12)^2$

$$(e) (0,12)^2$$

(f)
$$\frac{3\sqrt{0.04}}{\sqrt[3]{0.027}}$$

3. $36 \times 19 = 684$. Use this result to determine:

(a)
$$3.6 \times 1.9$$

(b)
$$0.036 \times 0.19$$

(c)
$$68,4 \div 0,19$$

4. Simplify:

(a)
$$(4,95x - 1,2) - (3,65x + 3,1)$$
 (b) $\frac{2,75x^{50}}{0,005x^{25}}$

(b)
$$\frac{2,75x^{50}}{0.005x^{25}}$$

5. Mulalo went to the shop and purchased 2 tubes of toothpaste for R6,98 each; 3 cans of cooldrink for R6,48 each, and 5 tins of baked beans for R7,95 each.

If he pays with a R100 note, how much change should he get?

THE DECIMAL NOTATION FOR FRACTIONS

CHAPTER 5 Exponents

In this chapter, you will revise work on exponents that you have done in previous grades. You will extend the laws of exponents to include exponents that are negative numbers. You will also solve simple equations in exponential form.

In Grade 8 you learnt about scientific notation. In this chapter we will extend the scientific notation to include very small numbers such as 0,0000123.

5.1	Revision	. 73
5.2	Integer exponents	. 77
5.3	Solving simple exponential equations	. 80
5 4	Scientific notation	82

71

 \times 2 \times 2

Exponents

Revision 5.1

Remember that exponents are a shorthand way of writing repeated multiplication of the same number by itself. For example: $5 \times 5 \times 5 = 5^3$. The **exponent**, which is 3 in this example, stands for however many times the value is being multiplied. The number that is being multiplied, which is 5 in this example, is called the **base**.

If there are mixed operations, then the powers should be calculated before multiplication and division. For example: $5^2 \times 3^2 = 25 \times 9$.

You learnt these laws for working with exponents in previous grades:

Law	Example
$a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$	$3^2 \times 3^3 = 3^{2+3} = 3^5$
$a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$	$5^4 \div 5^2 = 5^{4-2} = 5^2$
$(a^m)^n = a^{m \times n}$	$(2^3)^2 = 2^{2 \times 3} = 2^6$
$(a \times t)^n = a^n \times t^n$	$(3 \times 4)^2 = 3^2 \times 4^2$
$a^0 = 1$	$32^{\circ} = 1$

THE EXPONENTIAL FORM OF A NUMBER

4	TAT *4 41	C 11	4 * 1	
	VA/rite the	following in	evnonential	notation
	VVIIIC LIIC	. 1()11()7771112 111	CADOHICHUAI	TIOLALIOTI.

(a)
$$2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$$
 (b) $s \times s \times s \times s$

$$(h)$$
 $c \times c \times c \times c$

(c)
$$(-6) \times (-6) \times (-6)$$

(d)
$$2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5$$
 (e) $3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 7 \times 7$

(f)
$$500 \times (1,02) \times (1,02)$$

- 2. Write each of the numbers in exponential notation in some different ways if possible:
 - (a) 81

(b) 125

(c) 1 000

ORDER OF OPERATIONS

1.	. Calculate the value of 7 ² – 4. Bathabile did the calculation li Nathaniel did the calculation of Which learner did the calculat	differently: $7^2 - 4 = 49 - 4 =$	
	•••••••••••		
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
2.	. Calculate: $5 + 3 \times 2^2 - 10$, with	explanations.	
	•••••		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	•••••		
2			
3.	. Explain how to calculate 2 ⁶ – 6		
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	•••••		
4.	. Explain how to calculate $(4 + 1)$	$(1)^2 + 8 \times \sqrt[3]{64}$	
			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	•••••		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	•••••		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
L	AWS OF EXPONENTS		
1.	. Use the laws of exponents to ca	alculate the following:	
	•	$3^4 \div 3^2$	(c) $3^0 + 3^4$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

(d) $(2^3)^2$	(e) $(2 \times 5)^2$
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

2. Complete the table. Substitute the given number for *y*. The first column has been done as an example.

(f) $(2^2 \times 7)^3$

	у	2	3	4	5
(a)		2×2^4			
	1114	$= 2^{1+4}$ = 2^5			
	$y \times y^4$				
		= 32			
(b)		$2^2 \times 2^3$			
	112 × 113	$= 2^{2+3}$ $= 4 \times 8$			
	$y^2 \times y^3$	= 4 × 8			
		= 32			
(c)	<i>y</i> ⁵	$2^5 = 32$			

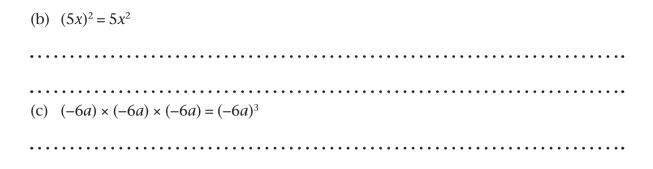
3.	Are the exp	pressions ν	$\times v^4$:	$v^2 \times 1$	v^3 and	v^5 ea	uivalent?	Explain.

4. Complete the table. Substitute the given number for y.

	y	2	3	4	5
(a)		$2^{4} \div 2^{2}$ $= 16 \div 4$ $= 4$			
	$y^4 \div y^2$	$= 16 \div 4$			
<i>a</i> >		= 4			
(b)	$y^3 \div y^1$	$2^3 \div 2^1$			
	$y^3 \div y^1$	$=8 \div 2$			
		= 4			
(c)	y^2	$2^2 = 4$			

2014/07/03 10:59:24 AM

5.	(a)	From the tab	ble, is $y^4 \div y^2 = y^3 \div$	$y^1 = y^2$? Explain w	hy.	
	• • • •	• • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •				• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	(b)	Evaluate y^4 ÷	y^2 for $y = 15$.			• • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • • •					
6.	Com	plete the tal	ole:			
		х	2	3	4	5
	(a)		2×5^2			
		2×5^x	= 2 × 25			
			= 50			
	(b)		$(2 \times 5)^2$			
		$(2 \times 5)^x$	$=10^{2}$			
			= 100			
	(c)		$2^2 \times 5^2$			
		$2^x \times 5^x$	= 4 × 25			
			= 100			
7.	(a)	From the tab	ble above, is 2×5^x	$= (2 \times 5)^{x}$? Explain	1.	
	(b)	Which expre	essions in questio	n 6 are equivalent	t? Explain.	
	• • • •					
	• • • •	• • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q	Relo	wis a calcula	ation that Wilson	did as homework	Mark each prob	olem correct or
٥.			plain the mistakes	did as homework s	wiaik eacii piod	ACIII COITECT OI
		$b^3 \times b^8 = b^{24}$	Piani the mount	·		
	(u)	υ				



5.2 Integer exponents

 5^4 means $5 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5$. The exponent 4 indicates the number of appearances of the repeated factor.

What may a negative exponent mean, for example what may 5⁻⁴ mean?

Mathematicians have decided to use negative exponents to indicate repetition of the multiplicative inverse of the base, for example 5⁻⁴ is used to indicate $\frac{1}{5} \times \frac{1}{5} \times \frac{1}{5} \times \frac{1}{5}$ or $(\frac{1}{5})^4$, and x^{-3} is used to indicate $(\frac{1}{x})^3$ which is $\frac{1}{x} \times \frac{1}{x} \times \frac{1}{x}$.

This decision was not taken blindly – mathematicians were well aware that it makes good sense to use negative exponents in this meaning. One major advantage is that the negative exponents, when used in this meaning, have the same properties as positive exponents, for example:

$$2^{-3} \times 2^{-4} = 2^{(-3) + (-4)} = 2^{-7} \text{ because } 2^{-3} \times 2^{-4} \text{ means } (\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2}) \times (\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2}) \text{ which is } (\frac{1}{2})^7.$$

$$2^{-3} \times 2^4 = 2^{(-3) + 4} = 2^1 \text{ because } 2^{-3} \times 2^4 \text{ means } (\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2}) \times (2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2) \text{ which is } 2.$$

NEGATIVE EXPONENTS

1. Express each of the following in the exponential notation in two ways: with positive exponents and with negative exponents.

(a)
$$\frac{1}{5} \times \frac{1}{5} \times \frac{1}{5} \times \frac{1}{5} \times \frac{1}{5} \times \frac{1}{5}$$
 (b) $\frac{1}{3} \times \frac{1}{3} \times \frac{1}{3} \times \frac{1}{3}$

.....

2. In each case, check whether the statement is true or false. If it is false, write a correct statement. If it is true, give reasons why you say so.

statement. If it is true, give reasons why you say so.
(a)
$$10^{-3} = 0.001$$
 (b) $3^{-5} \times 9^2 = 3$

(c)
$$25^2 \times 10^{-6} \times 2^6 = 5$$
 (d) $(\frac{1}{5})^{-4} = 5^4$

•••••••••••••••••••••••••

(23)-2	(la) 42 4-2	(a) 5-2 5-1
(a) $(3^3)^{-2}$	(b) $4^2 \times 4^{-2}$	(c) $5^{-2} \times 5^{-1}$
•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
•••••	••••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	•••••	•••••
	•••••	•••••
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••••
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
•••••	•••••	••••••
•••••	•••••	••••••
Calculate the value of each	of the following. Express you	r answers as common fractions
(a) 2^{-3}	(b) $3^2 \times 3^{-2}$	(c) $(2+3)^{-2}$

3. Calculate each of the following without using a calculator:

 2^{-1}

(a) $10^{-3} \times 20^4$

Power

Decimal value

(b) Explain the meaning of 10^{-3} .

(b) $(\frac{1}{5})^{-4}$

 0^{-1}

 10^{-2}

 10^{-1}

4. (a) Use a scientific calculator to determine the decimal values of the given powers.

 $(-2)^{-1}$

 $(0,3)^{-1}$

Example: To find 3^{-1} on your calculator, use the key sequence: $3 y^x 1 \pm$

 5^{-1}

(d)	3^{-2}	×	2-
(u)	3	^	_

(e)
$$2^{-3} + 3^{-3}$$

(f)
$$10^{-3}$$

(g) $2^3 + 2^{-3}$

(h) $(3^{-1})^{-1}$

(i) $(2^{-3})^2$

7. Which of the following are true? Correct any false statement.

(a)
$$6^{-1} = -6$$

(b)
$$3x^{-2} = \frac{1}{3x^2}$$

(c)
$$3^{-1}x^{-2} = \frac{1}{3x^2}$$

(d)
$$(ab)^{-2} = \frac{1}{a^2 h^2}$$

(d)
$$(ab)^{-2} = \frac{1}{a^2b^2}$$
 (e) $\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{-2} = \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2$ (f) $\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{-1} = 3$

(f)
$$\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{-1} = 3$$

5.3 Solving simple exponential equations

An exponential equation is an equation in which the variable is in the exponent. So when you solve exponential equations, you are solving questions of the form "To what power must the base be raised for the statement to be true?"

To solve this kind of equation, remember that:

If
$$a^m = a^n$$
, then $m = n$.

In other words, if the base is the same on either side of the equation, then the exponents are the same.

Example:

 $3^x = 243$

 $3^x = 3^5$ (rewrite using the same base)

x = 5 (since the bases are the same, we equate the exponents)

Some exponential equations are slightly more complex:

Example: $3^{x+3} = 243$

 $3^{x+3} = 3^5$ (rewrite using the same base)

x + 3 = 5 (equate the exponents)

x = 2

Check: LHS $3^{2+3} = 3^5 = 243$

Remember that the exponent can also be negative. However, you follow the same method to solve these kinds of equations.

Example: $2^{x} = \frac{1}{22}$

 $2^x = 2^{-5}$ (rewrite using the same base)

x = -5 (equate the exponents)

SOLVING EXPONENTIAL EQUATIONS

1. Use the table to answer questions that follow:

х	2	3	4	5
2^x	4	8	16	32
3 ^x	9	27	81	243
5 ^x	25	125	625	3 125

For which value of *x* is:

(a)
$$2^x = 32$$

(b)
$$3^x = 81$$

(c)
$$5^x = 3125$$

(d)
$$2^x = 8$$

(e)
$$5^x = 625$$

(f)
$$3^x = 9$$

(g)
$$5^{x+1} = 25$$

(h)
$$3^{x+2} = 27$$

(i)
$$2^{x-1} = 8$$

•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

2. Solve these exponential equations. You may use your calculator if necessary.

(a)
$$4^x = \frac{1}{64}$$

(b)
$$6^{2x} = 1296$$

(c)
$$2^{x-1} = \frac{1}{8}$$



(d)
$$3^{x+2} = \frac{1}{729}$$

(e)
$$5^{x+1} = 15625$$

(f)
$$2^{x+3} = \frac{1}{4}$$

(g) $4^{x+3} = \frac{1}{256}$

(h)
$$3^{2-x} = 81$$

(i)
$$5^{3x} = \frac{1}{125}$$

5.4 Scientific notation

Scientific notation is a way of writing numbers that are too big or too small to be written clearly in decimal form. The diameter of a hydrogen atom, for example, is a very small number. It is 0,000000053 mm. The distance from the sun to the earth is, on average, 150 000 000 km.

In scientific notation the diameter of the hydrogen molecule is written as 5.3×10^{-8} and the distance from the sun to the earth as 1.5×10^{8} . It is easier to compare and to calculate numbers like these, as it is very cumbersome to count the zeros when you work with these numbers.

Look at more examples below:

Decimal notation	Scientific notation
6 130 000	6,13 × 10 ⁶
0,00001234	1,234 × 10 ⁻⁵

A number written in scientific notation is written as the product of two numbers, in the form $\pm a \times 10^n$ where a is a decimal number between 1 and 10, and n is an integer.

Any number can be written in scientific notation, for example:

$$40 = 4.0 \times 10$$

 $2 = 2 \times 10^{0}$

The decimal number $324\,000\,000$ is written as $3,24\times10^8$ in scientific notation, because the decimal comma is moved 8 places to the left to form 3,24.

The decimal number 0,00000065 written in scientific notation is 6.5×10^{-7} , because the decimal point is moved 7 places to the right to form the number 6.5.

WRITING VERY SMALL AND VERY LARGE NUMBERS

1.	Express the following numb	oers in scienti	fic notation:						
	(a) 134,56		(b) 0,0000005	6678					
	(c) 876 500 000	••••••	(d) 0,0000000000321						
	(e) 0,006789	•••••••	(f) 89 100 000	0000000					
	(g) 0,001		(h) 100						
	•••••	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
2.	Express the following numb	oers in ordina	ry decimal nota	ition:					
	(a) $1,234 \times 10^6$		(b) 5×10^{-1}						
	(c) 4.5×10^5	••••••	(d) $6,543 \times 10^{-11}$						
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • •						
3.	Why do we say that 34×10^{4} scientific notation.	³ is not writter	n in scientific n	otation? Rewrite it in					
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
4.	Is each of these numbers wr scientific notation.	ritten in scien	tific notation? I	f not, rewrite it so that it is in					
	(a) 90.3×10^{-5}	(b) 100 × 10)2	(c) $1,36 \times 10^5$					
	•••••	•••••	•••••						
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • •	•••••					
	(d) $2,01 \times 10^{-2}$	(e) 0.01×10^{-1}	O_3	(f) 0.6×10^8					
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••	•••••						

2014/07/03 10:59:28 AM

CALCULATIONS USING SCIENTIFIC NOTATION

Example: 123 000 × 4 560 000

$$= 1,23 \times 10^5 \times 4,56 \times 10^6$$

(write in scientific notation)

$$= 1,23 \times 4,56 \times 10^5 \times 10^6$$

(multiplication is commutative)

$$=5,6088 \times 10^{11}$$

(Use a calculator to multiply the decimals,

but add the powers mentally.)

1. Use scientific notation to calculate each of the following. Give the answer in scientific notation.

(a) 135 000 × 246 000 000

(b) 987 654 × 123 456

(c) $0,000065 \times 0,000216$

(d) $0,000000639 \times 0,0000587$

•••••

Example: $5 \times 10^3 + 4 \times 10^4$

$$= 0.5 \times 10^4 + 4 \times 10^4$$

(Form like terms)

$$=4.5 \times 10^4$$

(Combine like terms)

2. Calculate the following. Leave the answer in scientific notation.

(a) $7,16 \times 10^5 + 2,3 \times 10^3$

(b) $2.3 \times 10^{-4} + 6.5 \times 10^{-3}$

(c) $4,31 \times 10^7 + 1,57 \times 10^6$

(d) $6,13 \times 10^{-10} + 3,89 \times 10^{-8}$

.....

CHAPTER 6 Patterns

In this chapter you will learn about different kinds of number patterns. Some number patterns are found within geometric patterns. You will learn to identify how patterns are formed, and to make your own patterns. You will learn to make formulae that can be used to describe number patterns.

6.1	Geometric patterns	. 87
6.2	More patterns	. 91
6.3	Different kinds of patterns in sequences	. 93
6.4	Formulae for sequences	. 96

1	2	3	5	8	13	21	34	55
2	3	5	8	13	21	34	55	89
3	5	8	13	21	34	55	89	144
5	8	13	21	34	55	89	144	233
8	13	21	34	55	89	144	233	377
13	21	34	55	89	144	233	377	610
21	34	55	89	144	233	377	610	987
34	55	89	144	233	377	610	987	1597
55	89	144	233	377	610	987	1597	2584
89	144	233	377	610	987	1597	2584	4181
144	233	377	610	987	1597	2584	4181	6765
233	377	610	987	1597	2584	4181	6765	10946
377	610	987	1597	2584	4181	6765	10946	17711
610	987	1597	2584	4181	6765	10946	17711	28657
987	1597	2584	4181	6765	10946	17711	28657	46368

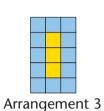
6 Patterns

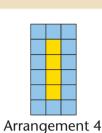
6.1 Geometric patterns

INVESTIGATING AND EXTENDING



Arrangement 2



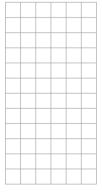


1. Blue and yellow square tiles are combined to form the above arrangements.

(a) How many yellow tiles are there in each arrangement?

(b) How many blue tiles are there in each arrangement?

(c) If more arrangements are made in the same way, how many blue tiles and how many yellow tiles will there be in arrangement 5? Check your answer by drawing the arrangement on the grid on the right.



(d) Complete this table.

Number of yellow tiles	1	2	3	4	5	8
Number of blue tiles						

(e) How many blue tiles will there be in a similar arrangement with 26 yellow tiles?

(f) How many blue tiles will there be in a similar arrangement with 100 yellow tiles?

	(g)	Describe how you thought to p	roduce	your a	nswer f	or (f)?			
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •		• • • • • • •
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • • •
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • • • •
	•••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • • •
	•••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • • •
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • •		• • • • •	• • • • • •		• • • • • • •
	•••					• • • • •	• • • • • •		• • • • • • •
	• • •					• • • • •	• • • • • •		
2.	(a)	In these arrangements there are	e red til	es too.	Compl	ete thi	s table.		
		Arrangement 1 Arrangement	t 2	Arrang	ement :	3	Arrange	ement 4	1
		Number of blue tiles	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
		Number of yellow tiles							
		Number of red tiles							
	(b)	How many red tiles are there in	each a	rrangeı	ment?				
	(c)	How many yellow tiles are there	e in eac	ch arrar	ngemen	ıt?			
		e number of red tiles in arrangemestion 2 is constant. It is always							

many blue and yellow tiles there are.

The number of blue tiles is different for different arrangements. We can say the number of blue tiles varies. We can also say the number of blue tiles is a **variable**.

MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 1

3.	Is the number of yellow tiles in the above arrangements a	constant or is it a variable?
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
4.	Look at these three arrangements. They consist of black squares, grey squares and white squares.	
	(a) Draw another arrangement of the same kind, but with a different length, on the grid provided on the right.	
	(b) Describe what is constant in these arrangements.	
	••••••••••	
	(c) What are the variables in these arrangements?	
	••••••••	
	•••••••••	
be	the smallest arrangement above may be called arrangement called arrangement 2, and so on.	,

5. (a) Complete the table for arrangements like those in question 4.

Arrangement number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	10	20
Number of black squares									
Number of grey squares									
Number of white squares									

(b)	How many grey squares do you think there will be in arrangement 15? Explain your answer.
(c)	How many black squares do you think there will be in arrangement 15? Explain your answer.

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 89 2014/07/03 10:59:30 AM

	(d)	How many white squares do you think there will be in your answer.	arı	an	gen	nen	t 15	? Ex	pla	iin
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • •	• • •	• • •	•••	•••	•••	•••	• • •
	• • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • •		• • •	• • •	• • •	• • •	• • •	• • •
4;	8; 1 The	umbers of grey squares in the different arrangements in (12; 16; 20; 24;, and so on. numbers of white squares in the different arrangements (2; 16; 25; 36; 49;, and so on.	•					•		ern:
1,	T ,)	7, 10, 23, 30, 49,, and so on.								
6.	Wh	nat are the next five numbers in each of the above patter	ns	?						
	• • • •		• • •	• • •	• • •	• • • •	• • •	• • • •	• • •	• • • •
7.	(a)	Draw the next arrangement that follows the same pattern.								
	(b)	How many black tiles are there in the arrangement you have drawn?								
	(c)	How many black tiles will there be in each of the next	fou	r a	rraı	nger	ner	ıts?		

DO SOMETHING MORE

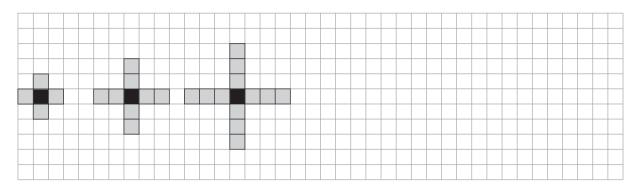
Consider the arrangements in question 4 again. If there are 20 grey tiles in such an arrangement, how many white tiles are there? Enter your answer in the table below. Also complete the table.

Number of grey squares	20	36	52			
Number of white squares				256	225	625

6.2 More patterns

DRAWING AND INVESTIGATING

1. (a) Make two more arrangements of black and grey squares so that a pattern is formed.



(b) Is there a constant in your pattern? If yes, what is its value?

.....

(c) Is there a variable in your pattern? If yes, give the values of the variable.

2. (a) Make three more arrangements with dots to form the sequence 1; 3; 6; 10; 15...



(b) How many dots will there be in the sixth and seventh arrangements? Explain how you got your answer.

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

- (c) How many dots are there in arrangements 1 and 2 together?
- (d) How many dots are there in arrangements 2 and 3 together?
- (e) How many dots are there in arrangements 3 and 4 together? \dots
- (f) How many dots are there in arrangements 4 and 5 together?

2014/07/03 10:59:30 AM

	(g)) .	Dε	esc	ril	oe	th	e p	oat	teı	rn	in	yc	oui	r ai	ns	we	ers	s fo	or (c),	(d), (e)	ar	ıd	(f)									
	• • •																	• •	• • •					• •												
8.	(a)		Dr	av	v t	WC	n	101	re a	arr	an	ıge	m	en	ts	to	n	ıal	ke	a p	at	ter	n.													
			1					+			H																									
									C																											
			+					+																												
7																																7				
	(b))	W	ha	t a	re	th	e'	vaı	ria	ble	es :	in	yo	ur	p	ati	ter	'n	?																
	(c)	,	Th	ie:	ทบ	m	he	rc	of b	ola	ck	SO	1112	ire	s i	s a	1 17	ari	iak	.1.	in	 . h	000							L o	T1	30	T 7'	111	10	
	(-)																	สมเ	ıaı	πе	111	un	C.76	• a	rra	m	261	me	411	IS.	- I I	10	v	111)T
			th		vai	ria							_														_									ΟI
				is '			bl	e i	s 4	in	tł	ıe	fir	st	arı	ar	ng	en	1e	nt	an	d 8	ir	t l	1e	se	со	nc	l a	rra	an					ΟI
	(d)	,	W	is ` ha	t i	s t	bl he	e is va	s 4 alu	in e c	th of t	ne thi	fir s v	st a	arı ial	rar ble	ng e i	en n t	ne the	nt e tl		d 8 d a	ir irra	tl an	ne ge:	se me	co	nc t?	la 	rra	an;	ge	m	en	ıt.	
	(d))	W W	is ha ha	t i t a	s t	bl he th	e i: va ie '	s 4 alu	in e c	th of t	ne thi	fir is v	st a zar ch	arı ial of	rar blo	ng e i	en n t	ne the	nt e tl	an nir	d 8 d a	ir irra	tl an	ne ge:	se me	co	nc t?	la 	rra	an;	ge	m	en	ıt.	
	(d))	W W	is ha ha	t i t a	s t	bl he th	e i: va ie '	s 4 alu val ain	in e d lue	th of t es o ou	ne thi of (fir is v eac	st a zar ch	arr ial of ers	rar blo th	ng e i: ne	en n t va	nei the	nt e tl abl	an nir	d 8 d a in	ir rra th	tl ang e f	ne ge: ìft	se me h a	co en	nc t? ar	l a nge	rra em	an; 	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	(d))	W W	is ha ha	t i t a	s t	bl he th	e i: va ie '	s 4 alu val ain	in e d lue	th of t es o ou	ne thi of (fir is v eac	st a zar ch	arr ial of ers	rar blo th	ng e i: ne	en n t va	nei the	nt e tl abl	ane nire es	d 8 d a in	ir rra th	tl ang e f	ne ge: ìft	se me h a	co en	nc t? ar	l a nge	rra em	an; 	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	(d))	W W	is ha ha	t i t a	s t	bl he th	e i: va ie '	s 4 alu val ain	in e d lue	th of t es o ou	ne thi of (fir is v eac	st a zar ch	arr ial of ers	rar blo th	ng e i: ne	en n t va	nei the	nt e tl abl	ane nire es	d 8 d a in	ir rra th	tl ang e f	ne ge: ìft	se me h a	co en	nc t? ar	l a nge	rra em	an; 	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	(d))	W W	is ha ha	t i t a	s t	bl he th	e i: va ie '	s 4 alu val ain	in e d lue	th of t es o ou	ne thi of o	first is veace ins	st a yar ch swe	arrial of ers	rar blo	ng e i ne	em n t va	ner the rria	nt e thabl	ane nire es	d 8 d a in	in th	n tl an; e f	ne ge ift	se me h	co	nc t? :ar	l a	rra	an; ner	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	• • •		W W pa 	is ha	et i	s t re n?	ble the Ex	e is va ne pla	s 4 alu val ain	in e d ue ue	th of these ou	ne thi	first is veace ins	st arathern	arrarial of ers	rar blo	ng e i: ne	em n t va	ner the rria	nt e thabl	and nire es	d 8 d a in	in th	n tl an; e f	ne ge ift	se me h	co	nc t? :ar	l a	rra	an; ner	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	• • •		W W pa 	is ha	et i	s t re n?	ble the Ex	e is va ne pla	s 4 alu val ain	in e d ue ue	th of these ou	ne thi	first is veace ins	st arathern	arrarial of ers	rar blo	ng e i: ne	em n t va	ner the rria	nt e thabl	and nire es	d 8 d a in	in th	n tl an; e f	ne ge ift	se me h	co	nc t? :ar	l a	rra	an; ner	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	• • •		W W pa 	is ha	et i	s t re n?	ble the Ex	e is va ne pla	s 4 alu val ain	in e d ue ue	th of these ou	ne thi	first is veace ins	st arathern	arrarial of ers	rar blo	ng e i: ne	em n t va	ner the rria	nt e tl	and nire es	d 8 d a in	in th	n tl an; e f	ne ge ift	se me h	co	nc t? :ar	l a	rra	an; ner	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	• • •		W W pa 	is ha	et i	s t re n?	ble the Ex	e is va ne pla	s 4 alu val ain	in e d ue ue	th of these ou	ne thi	first is veace ins	st arathern	arrarial of ers	rar blo	ng e i: ne	em n t va	ner the rria	nt e tl	and nire es	d 8 d a in	in th	n tl an; e f	ne ge ift	se me h	co	nc t? :ar	l a	rra	an; ner	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	• • •		W W pa 	is ha	et i	s t re n?	ble the Ex	e is va ne pla	s 4 alu val ain	in e d ue ue	th of these ou	ne thi	first is veace ins	st arathern	arrarial of ers	rar blo	ng e i: ne	em n t va	ner the rria	nt e tl	and nire es	d 8 d a in	in th	n tl an; e f	ne ge ift	se me h	co	nc t? :ar	l a	rra	an; ner	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
	• • •		W W pa 	is ha	et i	s t re n?	ble the Ex	e is va ne pla	s 4 alu val ain	in e d ue ue	th of these ou	ne thi	first is veace ins	st arathern	arrarial of ers	rar blo	ng e i: ne	em n t va	ner the rria	nt e tl	and nire es	d 8 d a in	in th	n tl an; e f	ne ge ift	se me h	co	nc t? :ar	l a	rra	an; ner	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	
1.	• • •		W W pa 	is ha	et i	s t re n?	ble the Ex	e is va ne pla	s 4 alu val ain	in e d ue ue	th of these ou	ne thi	first is veace ins	st arathern	arrarial of ers	rar blo	ng e i: ne	em n t va	ner the rria	nt e tl	and nire es	d 8 d a in	in th	n tl an; e f	ne ge ift	se me h	co	nc t? :ar	l a	rra	an; ner	ge nt	m	en	ıt.	

(b) Use this table to describe the variables in your pattern, and their values.

Arrangement number	1	2	3	4	5	6

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 92 2014/07/03 10:59:30 AM

6.3 Different kinds of patterns in sequences

DO THE SAME THING REPEATEDLY

1.	(a)	Write the nex	t th	ree n	umb	ers in	each	of the	sequenc	ces below.
		Sequence A:	5	9	13	17	21	• • • •	• • • •	••••
		Sequence B:	5	10	20	40	80	••••	••••	••••
		Sequence C:	5	10	17	26	37	••••	• • • •	••••
	(b)	Describe the d	liffe	rence	es in	the w	ays i	n which	the th	ree sequences are formed.

2. You will now make a sequence with the first term 5. Write 5 on the left on the line below. Then add 8 to the first term (5) to form the second term of your sequence. Write the second term next to the

The numbers in a sequence are also called the **terms** of the sequence.

first term (5) in the line below. Now add 8 to the second term to form the third term. Continue like this to form ten more terms.

A sequence can be formed by repeatedly adding or subtracting the same number. In this case the **difference** between consecutive terms in a sequence is **constant**.

A sequence can be formed by repeatedly multiplying or dividing. In this case the **ratio** between consecutive terms is **constant**.

A sequence can also be formed in such a way that neither the difference nor the ratio between consecutive terms is constant.

To write more terms of sequence A in question 1(a), you **added** 4 **repeatedly**.

To write more terms of sequence B in question 1(a), you **multiplied** by 2 **repeatedly**.

To write more terms of sequence C in question 1(a) you did not add the same number each time, nor did you multiply by the same number.

3.	Write the next three terms of each sequence. In each case also describe what the pattern is, for example "there is a constant difference of –5 between consecutive terms".
	(a) 100; 92; 84; 76;
	(b) 1; 4; 9; 16;
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(c) 2; 8; 18; 32;
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(d) 3; 6; 11; 18;
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(e) 640; 320; 160;
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(f) 1; 2; 4; 7; 11;
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	••••••
1.	In each case, follow the instruction to make a sequence with eight terms. (a) Start with 1 and multiply by 2 repeatedly.
	(b) Start with 256 and subtract 32 repeatedly.
	(c) Start with 256 and divide by 2 repeatedly.

The sequence that you made in question 2 can be represented with a table, as shown below.

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Term value	5	13	21	29	37	45	53	61	69	77

- 5. In each case make a sequence by following the instructions. Write the term numbers and the term values in the given table.
 - (a) Term 1 = 10. Add 15 repeatedly.

Term number				
Term value				

(b) Term 1 = 10. Term value = $15 \times \text{term number} - 5$.

Term number				
Term value				

(c) Term 1 = 10. Multiply by 2 repeatedly.

Term number			
Term value			

(d) Term 1 = 20. Term value = $10 \times 2^{\text{term number}}$

Term number			
Term value			

(e) Term 1 = 10. Term value = $10 \times 2^{\text{term number} - 1}$

Term number			
Term value			

(f) **Term 4** = 30. Add 5 repeatedly.

Term number				
Term value				

6. Instructions for forming a sequence are given in two different ways in question 5. How would you describe the two different ways for giving instructions to form a sequence?

•••••••••••••••••••••••••

6.4 Formulae for sequences

The formula for a number sequence can be written in two different ways:

- A description of the **relationship between consecutive terms**. In other words the calculations that you do to a term to produce the next term, as in questions 5(a), (c) and (f) on the previous page. The first (or another) term must be given. This kind of formula has two parts, the first term, and the relationship between terms.
- A description of the **relationship between the value of the term and its position in the sequence**. This relationship describes the calculations that can be done **on the term number** to produce the **term value**, as in question 5(b), (d) and (e) on the previous page.

MAKE TWO FORMULAE FOR THE SAME SEQUENCE

1	Choose any w	vhole number	smaller than	10 as the	first term	of a segmence
1.	Choose any w	viiole ilullibei	Silialiei tilali	10 as the	mst term	of a seduefice.

(a)	Use your	chosen	first t	erm to	o form	a sequen	ce by a	adding 5	repeat	tedly
-----	----------	--------	---------	--------	--------	----------	---------	----------	--------	-------

(b) Multiply each term number below by 5 to form a sequence:

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Term value								

(c) What is similar about the two sequences you have formed?

(d) Now fill in your own sequence in the same table:

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Term value in (b)								
Term value of your own sequence in (a)								

((e) What must you sequence as the				ii eacii t	erm val	ue in (b) to ge					
•	(O. F:11:- (I (-11			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • •			
((f) Fill in the follow	0				•		ımab on'	`				
	For the sequence												
_	For the sequence												
	Now you are going to repeat what you did in question 1, with a different set of sequences.												
	In this sequence, the	e term n	number	is mult	iplied b	v 3 to ge	et the te	erm val	lue.				
Г		1			T	Γ		1					
-	Term number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8				
	Term value	3	6	9	12	15	18	21	24				
	number for each of (a) The sequence th	at start	s with 8	3 and is	formed	• • • • •	••••	• • • • •	• • • • • •				
		at start at start	s with s	3 and is	s formed	d by add	ding 3 r	epeate	dly.				
	(a) The sequence the	at start at start	s with s	3 and is	s formed	d by add	ding 3 r	epeate	dly.				
	(a) The sequence the	at start at start	s with s	3 and is	s formed	d by add	ding 3 r	epeate	dly.				
	(a) The sequence the	at start at start at start eterms o	s with a	3 and is 12 and is 2 and is	s formed	d by addi by addi	ding 3 re	epeate peated	dly.				
	(a) The sequence the (b) The sequence the (c) The sequence the Write the first eight to describe how each te	at start at start terms o erm can × term	s with a	3 and is 12 and is 2 and is	s formed	d by addi by addi	ding 3 re	epeate peated	dly.				

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 97 2014/07/03 10:59:31 AM

CHAPTER 6: PATTERNS

(b) Term value = $5 \times \text{term number} - 3$

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Term value								

••••••

4.	For each sequence, write a formula to obtain each term from the previous term, and
	also try to write formula which relates each term to its position in the sequence.
	Check both your formulae by applying them, and write the results in the table.

((a)) 7	11	15	19	23	27	31	35	39	43

A.	Relationship between consecutive terms:	

В.	Relationship between term value and its position in sequence:	• • • • • • • • • •

Term number	1	2	3	4	5
Term value using A					
Term value using B					

(b)	60	57	54	51	48	45	42	39	36

A.	Relationship between	consecutive terms:	• • • •	 	 	 	 	 	

B. Relationship between term value and its position in sequence:

Term number	1	2	3	4	5
Term value using A					
Term value using B					

1	(c)	1	2	4	8	16	32	64	128
١	$\cdot \cdot \cdot$		_	-	0	10	.)	UT	140

A.	Relationship	between	consecutive to	erms:	• • •								• •					•••
----	--------------	---------	----------------	-------	-------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	-----	--	--	--	--	-----

B. Relationship between term value and its position in sequence:	• • • •
---	---------

••••	• •	• •	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Term number	1	2	3	4	5
Term value using A					
Term value using B					

CHAPTER 7 Functions and relationships

In this chapter you will work with relationships between sets of numbers called input numbers and output numbers. You will find the output numbers that correspond to given input numbers, and the other way round. You will use rules to calculate the output numbers, and you will solve equations to find the input numbers. The rules to calculate the output numbers can be given in words (verbally), as flow diagrams or as formulae.

7.1	Find output numbers for given input numbers	101
7.2	Different ways to represent the same relationship	103
7.3	Different representations of the same relationship	107

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 99

CHAPTER 7: FUNCTIONS AND RELATIONSHIPS

2014/07/03 10:59:31 AM

-10	100	-19	-36	-51	-64	-75	-84	-91
-9	81	-17	-32	-45	-56	-65	-72	-77
-8	64	-15	-28	-39	-48	-55	-60	-63
- 7	49	-13	-24	-33	-40	-45	-48	-49
-6	36	-11	-20	-27	-32	-35	-36	-35
-5	25	-11 -9	-16	-21	-24	-25	-24	-21
-4	16	-7 5	-12	-15	-16	-15	-12	-7
-3	9	-5	-8	-9	-8	-5	0	7
-2	4	-3	-4	-3	0	5	12	21
-1	1	-1	0	3	8	15	24	35
0	0	1	4	9	16	25	36	49
1	1	3	8	15	24	35	48	63
2	4	5	12	21	32	45	60	77
3	9	7	16	27	40	55	72	91
4	16	9	20	33	48	65	84	105
5	25	11	24	39	56	75	96	119
6	36	13	28	45	64	85	108	133
7	49	15	32	51	72	95	120	147
8	64	17	36	57	80	105	132	161
9	81	19	40	63	88	115	144	175
10	100	21	44	69	96	125	156	189

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 100 2014/07/03 10:59:32 AM

7 Functions and relationships

7.1 Find output numbers for given input numbers

TWO DIFFERENT SETS OF INPUT NUMBERS

In this activity you will do some calculations with: Set A: the natural numbers smaller than 10: the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9. Set B: multiples of 10 that are bigger than 10 but smaller than 100: the numbers 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80 and 90.

1.	You	are going to choose a number, multiply it by 5, and su	btract the answer from 50.
	(a)	Choose any number from set A and do the above calcu	ulations.
	(b)	Choose any number from set B and do the above calcu	
	(c)	If you choose any other number from set B, do you the a negative number?	
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
2.	(a)	Write down all the different output numbers that will be obtained when the calculations $50 - 5x$ are performed on the different numbers in set A.	Output numbers are numbers that you obtain when you apply the rule to the input numbers.
	• • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	•••		
	(b)	Write down the output numbers that will be obtained $50 - 5x$ is applied to set B.	
			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

3. (a) Complete the following table for set A:

Input numbers	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Values of $50 - 5x$									

(b) Complete the following table for set B:

Input numbers	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
Values of $50 - 5x$								

4. In this question your set of input numbers will be the even numbers 2; 4; 6; 8; 10; ...

(a)	What will all the output numbers be if the rule $2n + 1$ is applied to the set of even
	numbers? Write a list.

|--|

(b)	What will the output numbers be if the rule $2n - 1$ is applied?	

(c)	What will the output numbers be if the rule $2n + 5$ is applied?

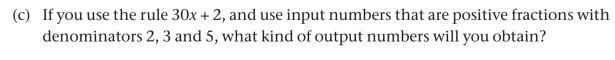
(d)	What will the output numbers be if the rule $3n + 1$ is applied?

5.	(a)	What kind of output numbers will be obtained by applying the rule x – 1 000 to
		natural numbers smaller than 1 000?

(b)	What kind of output numbers will be obtained by applying the rule $\frac{x}{10} + 10$ to

11	ıat	u!	a	lΙ	11	11	11	D	eı	13	5	11	.10	11	16	:1	ι	I.	ld	I.	1	1	U	:																				
 										• •													•			•			•	•	•		 											

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •



•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	 	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	 •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	, «	• •

7.2 Different ways to represent the same relationship

Consider the work that you did in Section 6.4 of Chapter 6. In each question, there were two variable quantities.

A quantity that changes is called a **variable quantity** or just a **variable**.

If one variable quantity is influenced by another, we say there is a **relationship** between the two variables. You can sometimes work out which number is linked to a specific value of the other variable.

An algebraic expression such as 10x + 5 describes what calculations must be done to find the output number that corresponds to a given input number.

The output number can also be called the output value, or the value of the expression, which is 10x + 5 in this case.

For any input number, application of the rule 10x + 5 produces only one output number, and it is very clear what that number is. For instance if the formula is applied to x = 3, the output number is 35.

A relationship between two variables in which there is only one output number for each input number, is called a **function**.

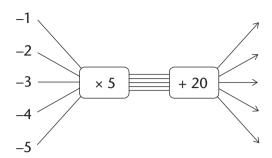
Functions can be represented in different ways:

- With a table that shows some values of the two variables. A table shows clearly which value of the output variable corresponds to each particular value of the input variable.
- A flow diagram, which shows what calculations are to be done to calculate the output number that corresponds to a given input variable.
- A formula, which also describes what calculations are to be done to calculate the output number that corresponds to a given input variable.
- A graph.

Examples of these four ways of describing a function are given on the next two pages.

CHAPTER 7: FUNCTIONS AND RELATIONSHIPS

1. Complete the flow diagram:



A completed flow diagram shows two kinds of information:

- It shows what calculations are done to produce the output numbers.
- It shows which output number is connected to which input number.

The flow diagram that you have completed shows the following information:

- Each input number is multiplied by 5, then 20 is added, to produce the output numbers.
- Which output numbers correspond to which input numbers.

The calculations that need to be done can also be described with an expression. The expression 5x + 20 describes what calculations you did in question 1. One may also write this as a formula:

A verbal formula:

output number = $5 \times \text{input number} + 20$

An algebraic formula:

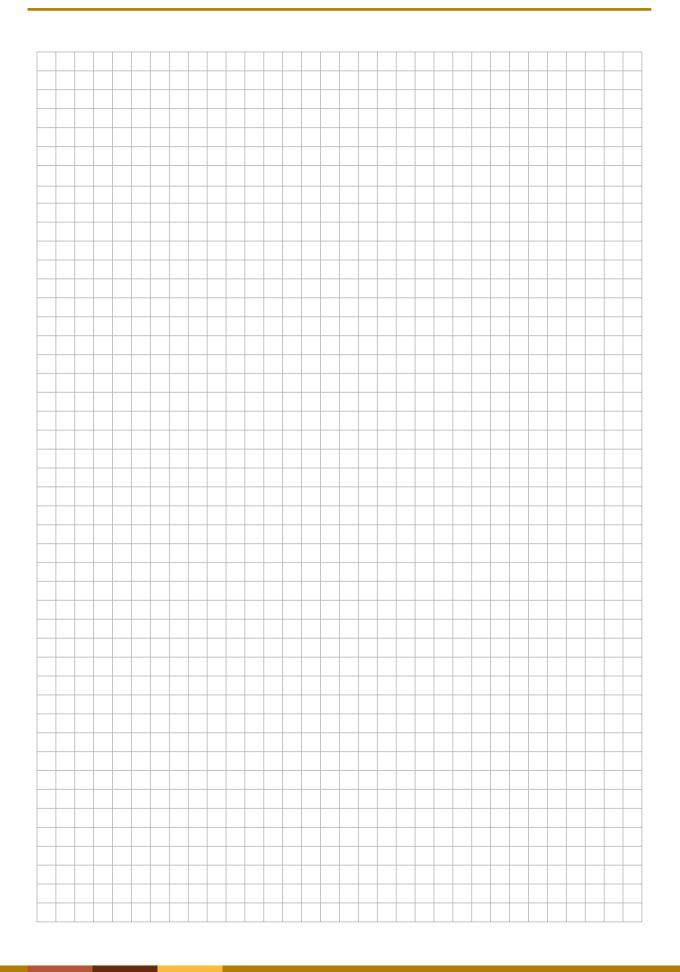
output number = 5x + 20

The output numbers of a function are also called **function values**. Hence the formula can also be written as function value = 5x + 20

2. Complete this table for the function described by 5x + 20:

Input numbers	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5
Function values					

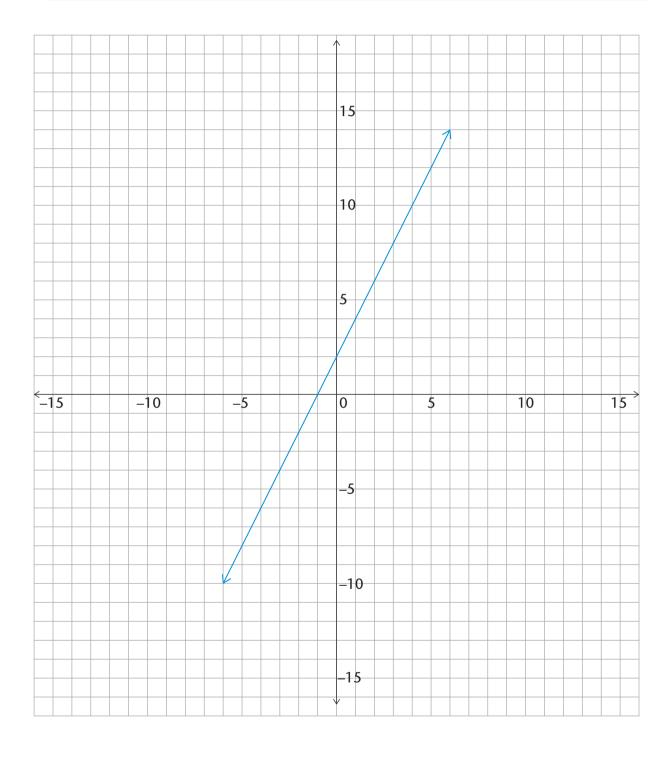
3. Draw a graph of this function on the next page.



CHAPTER 7: FUNCTIONS AND RELATIONSHIPS 105

4. A graph of a certain function is given below. Complete the table for this function.

Input numbers			
Function values			

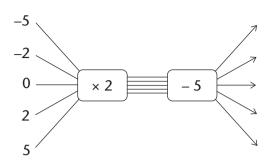


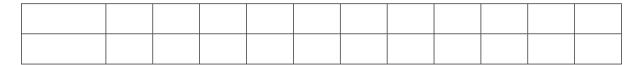
7.3 Different representations of the same relationship

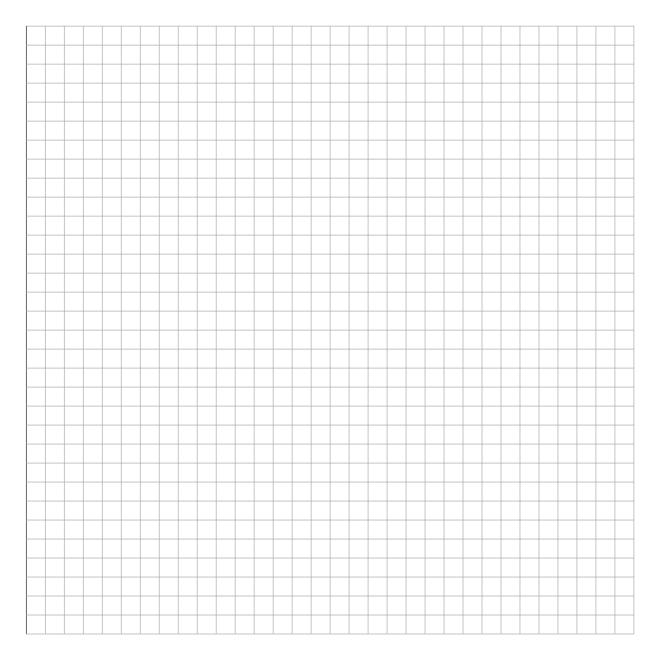
Do this work on the following pages. There is a page for each question.

Represent each of the following functions with

- (a) a flow diagram
- (b) a table of values for the set of integers from -5 to 5
- (c) a graph
- 1. The relationship described by the expression 3x + 4
- 2. The relationship described by the expression 2x 5
- 3. The relationship described by the expression $\frac{1}{2}x + 2$
- 4. The relationship described by the expression -3x + 4
- 5. The relationship described by the expression 2.5x + 1.5
- 6. The relationship described by the expression 0.2x + 1.4
- 7. The relationship described by the expression -2x 4







CHAPTER 8 Algebraic expressions

An algebraic expression is a description of a set of operations that are to be done in a certain order. In this chapter, you will learn to specify a different set of operations that will produce the same results as a given set of operations. Two different expressions that produce the same results are called equivalent expressions.

8.1	Algebraic language	117
8.2	Properties of operations	124
8.3	Combining like terms in algebraic expressions	127
8.4	Multiplication of algebraic expressions	131
8.5	Dividing polynomials by integers and monomials	135
8.6	Products and squares of binomials	139
8.7	Substitution into algebraic expressions	142

CHAPTER 8: ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS 115



Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 116 2014/07/03 10:59:35 AM

8 Algebraic expressions

8.1 Algebraic language

WORDS, DIAGRAMS AND EXPRESSIONS

1. Complete this table.

	Words	Flow diagram	Expression
	Multiply a number by 5 and then subtract 3 from the answer.	— × 5 — — →	5 <i>x</i> – 3
(a)	Add 5 to a number and then multiply the answer by 3.		
(b)		-3 × 5	
(c)			3(2x + 3)

An **algebraic expression** indicates **a sequence of operations** that can also be described in words. In some cases they can be described with flow diagrams.

Expressions in brackets should always be calculated first. If there are no brackets in an algebraic expression, it means that multiplication and division must be done first, and addition and subtraction afterwards.

For example, if x = 5 the expression 12 + 3x means "multiply 5 by 3, then add 12". It does **not** mean "add 12 and 3, then multiply by 5".

If you wish to say "add 12 and 3, then multiply by 5", the numerical expression should be $5 \times (12 + 3)$ or $(12 + 3) \times 5$.

- 2. Describe each of these sequences of calculations with an algebraic expression:
 - (a) Multiply a number by 10, subtract 5 from the answer, and multiply the answer by 3.

(b) Subtract 5 from a number, multiply the answer by 10, and multiply this answer by 3.

•••••

2014/07/03 10:59:35 AM

3. Evaluate each of these expressions for x = 10:

(a)
$$200 - 5x$$

(b)
$$(200-5)x$$

(c) 5x + 40

(d) 5(x+40)

•••••

(e) 40 + 5x

(f)
$$5x + 5 \times 40$$

,

SOME WORDS WE USE IN ALGEBRA

An expression with one term only, like $3x^2$, is a **monomial**.

An expression which is a sum of two terms, like 5x + 4, is called a **binomial**.

An expression which is a sum of three terms, like $3x^3 + 2x + 9$, is called a **trinomial**.

The symbol *x* is often used to represent the **variable** in an algebraic expression, but other letter symbols may also be used.

In the monomial $3x^2$, the 3 is called the **coefficient** of x^2 .

In the binomial 5x + 4, and the trinomial $3x^2 + 2x + 9$ the numbers 4 and 9 are called **constants**.

1. Complete the table, using the completed first row as an example.

Expression	Type of expression	Symbol used to represent the variable	Constant	Coefficient of
$x^2 + 6x + 10$	Trinomial	X	10	the second term is 6
$6s^3 + s^2 + 5$				s^2 is
$\frac{k}{3} + 12$				the first term is
4p ¹⁰				p ¹⁰ is

2. Consider the pattern-polynomial starting with $7x^5 + 5x^4 + 3x^3 + x^2 + ...$

(a) What is the coefficient of the fourth term?

(b) What is the exponent value of the fifth term?.....

(c) Do you think the sixth term will be a constant? Why?

•••••

EQUIVALENT ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS

1. Calculate the numerical value of the expressions for the various values of x. Do the calculations in your exercise book. Then fill in your answers.

	X	-2	-1	0	1	2
(a)	3x + 2					
(b)	2x - 3					
(c)	3x + 2 + 2x - 3					
(d)	2x - 3 + 3x + 2					
(e)	5 <i>x</i> – 1					
(f)	(3x+2)(2x-3)					
(g)	3x(2x-3) + 2(2x-3)					
(h)	$6x^2 - 5x - 6$					
(i)	$\frac{(3x+2)(2x-3)}{3x+2}$					
(j)	$\frac{6x^2-5x-6}{3x+2}$					

2. Make a list of all the algebraic expressions above which have the same numerical value for the same value of *x*, although they may look different:

••••••

Equivalent expressions are algebraic expressions that have different sequences of operations, but have the same numerical value for any given value of *x*.

It is often convenient not to work with a given expression, but to **replace** it with an equivalent expression.

3. Complete this table.

х	2	3	5	10	-5	-10
12x - 7 + 3x + 10 - 5x						

4. Complete this table.

х	2	3	5	10	-5	-10
10x + 3						

5.	(a)	Is $10x + 3$ equivalent to $12x - 7 + 3x + 10 - 5x$? Explain your answer.	

.....

(b)	Suppose you need to know how much $12x - 7 + 3x + 10 - 5x$ is for $x = 37$ and
	x = -43. What do you think is the easiest way to find out?

CONVENTIONS FOR WRITING ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS

Here are some things that mathematicians have agreed upon, and it makes mathematical work much easier if all people stick to these agreements.

A **convention** is something that people have agreed to do in the same way.

The multiplication sign is often omitted in algebraic expressions: We normally write 4x instead of $4 \times x$ and 4(x - 5) instead of $4 \times (x - 5)$.

It is a convention to write a known number first in a product, i.e. we write $3 \times x$ rather than $x \times 3$, and we write 3x **but not** x3.

1. Rewrite each of the following in the way in which it is normally written in algebraic expressions.

(a)
$$x \times 4 + x \times y - y \times 3$$

(b)
$$7 \times (10 - x) + (5 \times x + 3)10$$

••••••

People all over the world have agreed that, in expressions that do not contain brackets, addition and subtraction should be performed as they appear from left to right in the expression.

According to this convention, x - y + z means that you first have to subtract y from x, then add z. For example if x = 10, y = 5 and z = 3, x - y + z is 10 - 5 + 3 and it means 10 - 5 = 5, then 5 + 3 = 8. It does not mean 5 + 3 = 8, then 10 - 8 = 2.

2. Calculate 50 - 20 + 30 and 50 + 30 - 20 and 50 - 30 + 20

3. Evaluate each of the following expressions for x = 10, y = 5 and z = 2.

(a)
$$x + y - z$$

(b)
$$x - z + y$$

(c) 10y - 3x + 5z - 4y

(d)
$$10y - 3x - 5z + 4y + 3x$$

.....

People have also agreed that, in expressions that do not contain brackets, we should do **multiplication** (and division) **before addition and subtraction**.

Hence $5 + 3 \times 4$ should be understood as "multiply 4 by 3, then add the answer to 5" and not as "add 5 and 3 then multiply the answer by 4".

Also, $3 \times 4 + 5$ should be understood to mean "multiply 4 by 3, then add 5 to the answer", and not as "add 4 and 5 then multiply the answer by 3".

4. Do each of the following calculations.

(a) multiply 4 by 3, then add 5 to the answer

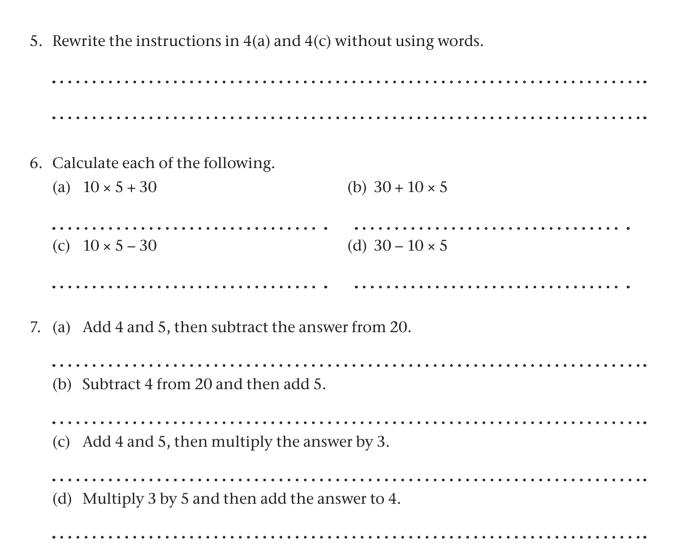
•••••

(b) add 4 and 5 then multiply the answer by 3

(c) multiply 4 by 3, then add the answer to 5

(d) add 5 and 3 then multiply the answer by 4

(a) add 5 and 5 then maniphy the answer by 1



If we want to specify the calculations in 7(a) and 7(c) without using words we face challenges.

We cannot write 20 - 4 + 5 for "add 4 and 5 then subtract the answer from 20", because that would mean "subtract 4 from 20 then add 5". We need a way to indicate, without using words, that we want the addition to be performed before the subtraction in this case.

Similarly we cannot write $4 + 5 \times 3$ for "add 4 and 5 then multiply the answer by 3", because that would mean "multiply 3 by 5 and then add the answer to 4". We need a way to indicate, without using words, that we want the addition to be performed before the multiplication in this case.

Mathematicians have agreed to use brackets to address the above challenges. The following convention is used all over the world:

Whenever there are brackets in an expression, the calculations within the brackets should be performed first.

Hence 20 - (4 + 5) means add 4 and 5 then subtract the answer from 20, but 20 - 4 + 5 means subtract 4 from 20 then add 5.

 $(4+5) \times 3$ or $3 \times (4+5)$ means add 4 and 5 then multiply the answer by 3, but $4+5 \times 3$ means multiply 3 by 5 then add the answer to 4.

10 + 2(5 + 9) means add 5 and 9, multiply the answer by 2, then add this answer to 10: 5 + 9 = 14 $14 \times 2 = 28$ 28 + 10 = 38

8. Calculate each of the following.

(a)
$$100 + 50 - 30$$

(b)
$$100 + (50 - 30)$$

(c) 100 - 50 + 30

(d)
$$100 - (50 + 30)$$

(e) 3(10-4)+2

(f)
$$10(5+7)+3(18-8)$$

(g) $250 - 10 \times (18 + 2) + 35$

(h)
$$(20 + 20) \times (20 - 10)$$

(i) $(250-10) \times (18+2) + 35$

(j)
$$20 + 20 \times (20 - 10)$$

(k) $200 + (100 \times 2(15 + 5))$

(l)
$$(200 + 100) \times 2 \times 15 + 5$$

••••••

In algebra, we normally write 3(x + 2y) instead of $(x + 2y) \times 3$, and we write 3(x - 2y) instead of $(x - 2y) \times 3$. Don't let this conventional way of writing in algebra confuse you. The expression 3(x + 2y) does not mean that multiplication by 3 is the first thing you should do when you evaluate the expression for certain values of x and y. The first thing you should do is to add the values of x and y. That is what the brackets tell you!

However, performing the instructions 3(x + 2y) is not the only way in which you can find out how much 3(x + 2y) is for any given values of x and y. Instead of working out 3(x + 2y), you may work out 3x + 6y. In this case you will multiply each term before you add them together.

9. Evaluate each of the following expressions for x = 10, y = 5 and z = 2.

(a)
$$xy + z$$

(b)
$$x(y+z)$$

(c) x + yz

(d) xy + xz

(e) xy - z

(f) x(y-z)

(g) x - yz

(b) 444 447

(0) /

(h) xy - yz

(i) x + (y - z)

(j) x - (y - z)

(k) x - (y + z)

(1) x-y-z

(m) x + y - z

(n) x - y + z

(111) X 1 y 2

••••••••••••••••••••••••

8.2 Properties of operations

1. Calculate the following:

(a) 5(3+4)

(b) $5 \times 3 + 5 \times 4$

(c) $6 \times 3 + (4+6)$

(d) $(6+4)+3\times 6$

(e) $3 \times (4 \times 5)$

(f) $(3 \times 4) \times 5$

You should have noticed that for each row the results are the same. This is because operations with numbers have certain properties, namely the **distributive**, **commutative** and **associative** properties.

The **distributive** property is used each time you multiply a number in parts. For example:

The number thirty-four is actually 30 + 4. You may calculate 5×34 by calculating 5×30 and 5×4 , and then adding the two answers:

$$5 \times 34 = 5 \times 30 + 5 \times 4$$

The word "distribute" means to spread out. The distributive property may be described as follows:

a(b+c) = ab + acwhere a, b and c can be any numbers.

We may say: "multiplication distributes over addition"

2. Calculate each of the following:

(a)
$$5(x - y)$$
 for $x = 10$ and $y = 8$

(b)
$$5x - 5y$$
 for $x = 10$ and $y = 8$

(c) 5(x - y) for x = 100 and y = 30

(d)
$$5x - 5y$$
 for $x = 100$ and $y = 30$

(e) 5(x-y+z) for x=10, y=3, z=2 (f) 5x-5y+5z for x=10, y=3, z=2

(f)
$$5y = 5y + 5z$$
 for $y = 10$ $y = 3$ $z = 2$

3. We say "multiplication distributes over addition".

Does multiplication also distribute over subtraction?

Give examples to support your answer.

For any values of *x* and *y*,

- x + y and y + x give the same answers, and
- xy and yx give the same answers.

This is called the **commutative property** of addition, and multiplication.

4. We say "addition is commutative" and "multiplication is commutative".

Is subtraction also commutative? Demonstrate your answer with an example.

The **associative property** allows you to arrange three or more numbers in any sequence when adding or multiplying. For any values of x, y and z, the following expressions all have the same answer:

$$x + y + z$$

$$y + x + z$$

$$Z + y + x$$

5. Calculate 16 + 33 + 14 + 17 in the easiest possible way.

.....

The associative property of multiplication allows you to simplify something like the following.

$$abc + bca + cba$$

Because the order of multiplication does not change the result we can rewrite this expression as: abc + abc + abc.

This then can be simplified by adding like terms to be 3abc. You will be able to use these properties throughout this chapter and when you do algebraic manipulations.

When you form an expression that is equivalent to a given expression you say that you *manipulate* the expression.

6. Replace each of the following expressions with a simpler expression that will give the same answer. **Do not do any calculations now.** In each case state why your replacement will be easier to do.

(a)
$$17 \times 43 + 17 \times 57$$

(b)
$$7 \times 5 \times 8 \times 4 + 12 \times 8 \times 4 \times 7 - 9 \times 4 \times 5 \times 8$$

(c) $43 \times 17 + 57 \times 17$ (d) 43x + 57x (for x = 213 or any other value)

7. Which properties of operations did you use in each part of question 6?

8.3 Combining like terms in algebraic expressions

REARRANGE TERMS, THEN COMBINE LIKE TERMS

To check whether two expressions are possibly equivalent, you can evaluate both expressions for several different values of the variable.

1.	valent and then es.						
•••••							
	••••••						
	(b) $x(x+3)$ and 2	$x^2 + 3x$					
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		

Some expressions can be simplified by rearranging the terms and combining "like terms".

In the expression $5x^2 + 13x + 7 + 2x^2 - 8x - 12$, the terms $5x^2$ and $2x^2$ are like terms.

Two or more like terms can be combined to form a single term.

 $5x^2 + 2x^2$ can be replaced by $7x^2$ because for any value of x, for example x = 2 or x = 10, calculating $5x^2 + 2x^2$ and $7x^2$ will produce the same output value (try it!).

2. Complete the table.

Х	10	2	5	1
$5x^2 + 2x^2$				
$7x^2$				
13x - 8x				
5 <i>x</i>				

It is difficult to see the like terms in a long expression like $3x^2 + 13x + 7 + 2x^2 - 8x - 12$. Fortunately, you can rearrange the terms in an expression so that the like terms are next to each other.

3. (a) Complete the second and third rows of the table below. You will complete the next two rows when you do question (g).

X	10	2	5	1
$3x^2 + 13x + 7 + 2x^2 - 8x - 12$				
$3x^2 + 2x^2 + 13x - 8x + 7 - 12$				

(b)	What do you observe?	
` /	,	

(c)	How does the one expression in the above table differ from the other one?
-----	---

• •		•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•				•	•	•		•	•			•	•	•		•	•	•				 	•	•	•				•	•	•	٠		•	•			•		•	

(d)	Combine like terms in $3x^2 + 2x^2 + 13x - 8x + 7 - 12$ to make a shorter equivaler	nt
	expression.	

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	 •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

(e)	Evaluate your shorter expression for $x = 10$, $x = 2$ and $x = 5$.

.....

(f)	Is your shorter expression equivalent to $3x^2 + 13x + 7 + 2x^2 - 8x - 12$?
	Explain how you know whether it is or is not.

- (g) Evaluate $5x^2 + 5x 5$ and $5(x^2 + x 1)$ for x = 10, x = 2, x = 5 and x = 1, and write your answers in the last two rows of the above table.
- 4. Simplify each expression:

(a)
$$(3x^2 + 5x + 8) + (5x^2 + x + 4)$$

(a)
$$(3x^2 + 5x + 8) + (5x^2 + x + 4)$$
 (b) $(7x^2 + 3x + 5) + (2x^2 - x - 2)$

(c)
$$(6x^2 - 7x - 4) + (4x^2 + 5x + 5)$$

(d)
$$(2x^2 - 5x - 9) - (5x^2 - 2x - 1)$$

(e)
$$(-2x^2 + 5x - 3) + (-3x^2 - 9x + 5)$$
 (f) $(y^2 + y + 1) + (y^2 - y - 1)$

(f)
$$(y^2 + y + 1) + (y^2 - y - 1)$$

5. Complete the table. (Hint: Save yourself some work by simplifying first!)

х	2,5	3,7	6,4	12,9	35	-4,7	-0,04
(3x+6,5)+(7x+3,5)							
(13x - 6) + (26 - 12x)							

6. Simplify:

(a)
$$(2r^2 + 3r - 5) + (7r^2 - 8r - 12)$$

(b)
$$(2r^2 + 3r - 5) - (7r^2 - 8r - 12)$$

(c)
$$(2x + 5xy + 3y) - (12x - 2xy - 5y)$$

(c)
$$(2x + 5xy + 3y) - (12x - 2xy - 5y)$$
 (d) $(2x + 5xy + 3y) + (12x - 2xy - 5y)$

7. Evaluate the following expressions for x = 3, x = -2, x = 5 and x = -3.

(a)
$$2x(x^2-x-1) + 5x(2x^2+3x-5) - 3x(x^2+2x+1)$$

(b)
$$(3x^2 - 5x + 7) - (7x^2 + 3x - 5) + (5x^2 - 2x + 8)$$

8. Write equivalent expressions without brackets.

(a)
$$3x^4 - (x^2 + 2x)$$

(b)
$$3x^4 - (x^2 - 2x)$$

(c)
$$3x^4 + (x^2 - 2x)$$

(d)
$$x - (y + z - t)$$

9. Write equivalent expressions without brackets, rearrange so that like terms are grouped together, and then combine the like terms.

(a)
$$2y^2 + (y^2 - 3y)$$

(b)
$$3x^2 + (5x + x^2)$$

(c)
$$6x^2 - (x^4 + 3x^2)$$

(d)
$$2t^2 - (3t^2 - 5t^3)$$

(c)
$$6x^2 - (x^4 + 3x^2)$$

(e)
$$6x^2 + 3x - (4x^2 + 5x)$$

(f)
$$2r^2 - 5r + 7 + (3r^2 - 7r - 8)$$

(g)
$$5(x^2 + x) + 2(x^2 + 3x)$$

(h)
$$2x(x-3) + 5x(x+2)$$

(h)
$$2x(x-3) + 5x(x+2)$$

10. Write equivalent expressions without brackets and simplify these expressions as far as possible.

Example $5r^2 - 2r(r+5) = 5r^2 - 2r^2 - 10r$ $=3r^2-10r$

(a)
$$3x^2 + x(x+3)$$

(b)
$$5x + x(7 - 2x)$$

(c)
$$6r^2 - 2r(r-5)$$

(d)
$$2a(a+3) + 5a(a-2)$$

(e)
$$6y(y+1) - 3y(y+2)$$
 (f) $4x(2x-3) - 3x(x+2)$
 (g) $2x^2(x-5) - x(3x^2-2)$ (h) $x(x-1) + x(2x+3) - 2x(3x+1)$

8.4 Multiplication of algebraic expressions

MULTIPLY POLYNOMIALS BY MONOMIALS

1.	(a)	Calculate 3×38 and 3×62 and add the two answers.
	• • • •	
	(b)	Add 38 and 62, then multiply the answer by 3.
	(c)	If you do not get the same answer for (a) and (b), you have made a mistake. Rework until you get it right.

The fact that if you work correctly, you get the same answer in questions 1(a) and 1(b), is a demonstration of the **distributive property**.

What you saw in question 1 was that $3 \times 100 = 3 \times 38 + 3 \times 62$.

somewhere. Correct your work.

The distributive property may be described as follows: a(b + c) = ab + ac and a(b - c) = ab - ac, where a, b and c can be any numbers.

This can also be expressed by writing $3(38 + 62) = 3 \times 38 + 3 \times 62$.

(a) Calculate 10 × 56
(b) Calculate 10 × 16 + 10 × 40
3. (a) Write down any two numbers smaller than 100. Let us call them *x* and *y*. Add your two numbers, and multiply the answer by 3.
(b) Calculate 3 × *x* and 3 × *y* and add the two answers.
(c) If you do not get the same answers for (a) and (b) you have made a mistake

4. Complete the table.

Х	12	50	5
у	4	30	10
5x - 5y			
5(x - y)			
5x + 5y			
5(x+y)			

Performing the instructions 5(x + y) is not the only way in which you can find out how much 5(x + y) is for any given values of x and y. Instead of doing 5(x + y) you may do 5x + 5y. In this case you will multiply first, and again, before you add.

5.	(a)	For $x = 10$ and $y = 20$, evaluate $8(x + y)$ by first adding 10 and 20, and then
		multiplying by 8.

• • •	
(b)	Now evaluate $8(x + y)$ by doing $8x + 8y$, in other words first calculate 8×10 and
	8×20 .

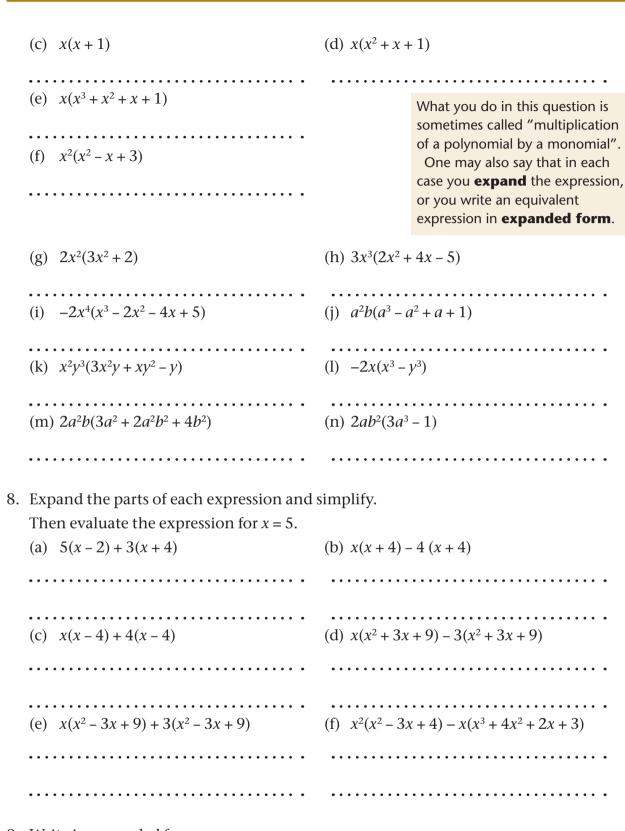
6.	In question 5 you evaluated $8(x + y)$ in two different ways for the given values of x
	and y. Now also evaluate $20(x - y)$ in two different ways, for $x = 5$ and $y = 3$.

7. Use the distributive property in each of the following cases to make a different expression that is equivalent to the given expression.

(a)
$$a(b+c)$$

(b)
$$a(b + c + d)$$

••••••



9. Write in expanded form.

(a) $x(x^2 + 2xy + y^2) + y(x^2 + 2xy + y^2)$

••••••••••••••••••••••••

(b)	$x^{2}y(x^{2}-2xy+y^{2})-xy^{2}(2x^{2}-3xy-y^{2})$
(c)	$ab^2c(b^2c^2-ac)+b^2c^4(a^2+abc^2)$
(d)	$p^2q(pq^2+p+q)+pq(p-q^2)$
• • •	

SQUARES AND CUBES AND ROOTS OF MONOMIALS

1.	Evaluate each	of the following	expressions for $x = 2$	x = 5 and $x = 10$.
1.	L'alaate caell	OI the lond wing	$\frac{1}{2}$, <i>n</i> – 5 una <i>n</i> – 10.

(a)
$$(3x)^2$$

(b)
$$9x^2$$

(c)
$$(2x)^2$$

(d)
$$4x^2$$

(e)
$$(2x)^3$$

(f)
$$8x^3$$

(g)
$$(2x + 3x)^2$$

(h)
$$(10x - 7x)^2$$

••••••••••••••••••

2. In each case, write an equivalent monomial without brackets.

(a)
$$(5x)^2$$

(b)
$$(5x)^3$$

(c) $(20x)^2$

(d)
$$(10x)^3$$

(e) $(2x + 7x)^2$

(f)
$$(20x - 13x)^3$$

.....

The square root of $16x^2$ is 4x, because $(4x)^2 = 16x^2$.

3. Write down the square root of each of the following expressions.

(a)
$$\sqrt{(7x)^2}$$

(b)
$$\sqrt{9x^2}$$

(c) $\sqrt{(20x)^2}$

(d)
$$\sqrt{100x^2}$$

••••••

	(e) $\sqrt{(20x - 15x)^2}$	(f) $\sqrt{25x^2}$
	(g) $\sqrt{(21x-16x)^2}$	(h) $\sqrt{(5x)^2}$
Th	the cube root of $64x^3$ is $4x$, because $(4x)^3 = 6$	$4x^3$
4.	Write down the cube root of each of the (a) $\sqrt[3]{(7x)^3}$	following expressions. (b) $\sqrt[3]{27x^3}$
	(c) $\sqrt[3]{(20x)^3}$	(d) $\sqrt[3]{1000x^3}$
	(e) $\sqrt[3]{(20x-15x)^3}$	(f) $\sqrt[3]{125x^3}$

8.5 Dividing polynomials by integers and monomials

1. Complete the table.

Can you explain your observations?

X	20	10	5	-5	-10	-20
$(100x - 5x^2) \div 5x$						
20 – x						

2. (a) R240 prize money must be shared equally between 20 netball players. How much should each one get?

(b) Mpho decided to do the calculations below. Do not do Mpho's calculations, but

 $(140 \div 20) + (100 \div 20) \dots$ (c) Gert decided to do the calculations below. Without doing the calculations, say whether Gert will get the same answer that you got for question (a).

$$(240 \div 12) + (240 \div 8)$$

3.	Do the necessary calculations to find out whether the following statement are true
	or false:

(a)
$$(140 + 100) \div 20 = (140 \div 20) + (100 \div 20)$$

(b)
$$240 \div (12 + 8) = (240 \div 12) + (240 \div 8)$$

(c)
$$(300-60) \div 20 = (300 \div 20) - (60 \div 20)$$

Division is **right-distributive** over addition and subtraction, for example,

$$(2+3) \div 5 = (2 \div 5) + (3 \div 5).$$

The division symbol is to the right of the brackets.

But it is not left-distributive, for example,

$$10 \div (2 + 4) \neq (10 \div 2) + (10 \div 4)$$
.

For example
$$(200 + 40) \div 20 = (200 \div 20) + (40 \div 20) = 10 + 2 = 12$$
, and $(500 + 200 - 300) \div 50 = (500 \div 50) + (200 \div 50) - (300 \div 50)$

4. Evaluate each expression for x = 2 and x = 10

(a)
$$(10x^2 + 5x) \div 5$$
....

(b)
$$(10x^2 \div 5) + (5x \div 5)$$

(c)
$$2x^2 + x$$

(d)
$$(10x^2 + 5x) \div 5x$$
.....

(e)
$$(10x^2 \div 5x) + (5x \div 5x)$$
.....

(f)
$$2x + 1$$

The distributive property of division can be expressed like this:

$$(x+y) \div z = (x \div z) + (y \div z)$$

$$(x - y) \div z = (x \div z) - (y \div z)$$

5. (a) Do not do any calculations. Which of the following expressions do you *think* will have the same value as $(10x^2 + 20x - 15) \div 5$, for x = 10 as well as x = 2?

$$2x^2 + 20x - 15$$

$$10x^2 + 20x - 3$$

$$2x^2 + 4x - 3$$

(b) Do the necessary calculations to check your answer.

••••••

6. Simplify:

(a)
$$(2x + 2y) \div 2$$

(b)
$$(4x + 8y) \div 4$$

(c) $(20xy + 16x) \div 4x$

(d)
$$(42x - 6) \div 6$$

(e) $(28x^4 - 7x^3 + x^2) \div x^2$

(f)
$$(24v^2 + 16v) \div 8v$$

.....

(f)
$$(24x^2 + 16x) \div 8x$$

(g) $(30x^2 - 24x) \div 3x$

•••••

7. Simplify:

(a)
$$(9x^2 + xy) \div xy$$

(b)
$$(48a - 30ab + 16ab^2) \div 2a$$

(c) $(3a^3 + a^2) \div a^2$

(d)
$$(13a - 17ab) \div a$$

(e) $(3a^2 + 5a^3) \div a$

(f)
$$(39a^2b + 13ab + ab^2) \div ab$$

.....

The instruction $72 \div 6$ may also be written as $\frac{72}{6}$.

This notation, which looks just like the common fraction notation, is often used to indicate division.

Hence, instead of $(10x^2 + 20x - 15) \div 5$ we may write $\frac{10x^2 + 20x - 15}{5}$.

Since $(10x^2 + 20x - 15) \div 5$ is equivalent to $(10x^2 \div 5) + (20x \div 5) - (15 \div 5)$, $\frac{10x^2 + 20x - 15}{5}$ is equivalent to $\frac{10x^2}{5} + \frac{20x}{5} - \frac{15}{5}$.

8. Find a simpler equivalent expression for each of the following expressions (clearly, these expressions do not make sense if x = 0).

(a)
$$\frac{16x^2 - 12x}{4x}$$

(b)
$$\frac{16x^3 - 12x}{4x}$$

(c) $\frac{16x^3 - 12x^2}{4x}$

(d)
$$\frac{16x^3 - 12x^2}{4x^2}$$

(e) $\frac{16x^3 - 12x^2}{2x}$

(f)
$$\frac{16x^3 - 12x}{8x}$$

••••••

X	1,5	2,8	-3,1	
$\frac{3x+12}{3}$				

9. In each case check whether the statement is true for x = 10; x = 100; x = 5; x = 1 and

(a) $\frac{x^2}{x} = x$ (b) $\frac{x^3}{x} = x^2$ (c) $\frac{x^3}{x^2} = x$

(d) $\frac{5x^3}{x} = 5x^2$ (e) $\frac{5x^3}{x} = 5^3$

 $\frac{18x^2+6}{6}$

11. Complete the table:

 $(f) \quad \frac{5x}{v^2} = \frac{5}{v} \quad \dots$

10. Explain why the equations below are true:

(a) $\frac{100x - 5x^2}{5x} = 20 - x \text{ for all values of } x \text{ except } x = 0$

(b) $\frac{15x^2 - 10x}{5x}$ is equivalent to 3x - 2, excluding x = 0.

 $5x^2 + 7x$

(Hint: Simplify the expressions first to save yourself some work!)

12. Simplify each expression to the equivalent form requiring the fewest operations.

x = -2.

(a) $\frac{3a+a^2}{a}$ (b) $\frac{x^3+2x^2-x}{x}$ (c) $\frac{2a+12ab}{2a}$ (d) $\frac{12x^2+10x}{2x}$ (e) $\frac{21ab-14a^2}{7a}$ (f) $\frac{15a^2b+30ab^2}{5ab}$

0,72

(g) $\frac{7x^3 + 21x^2}{7x^2}$ (h) $\frac{3x^2 + 9x}{3x}$

13. Solve the equations.

(a) $\frac{3x^2 + 15x}{3x} = 20$

(b) $\frac{30x-18x^2}{6x}=2$

14. Complete the table.

	x	1,1	1,2	1,3	1,4	1,5
(a)	$\frac{x^3 + 2x^2 - x}{x}$					
(b)	$\frac{7x^3 + 21x^2}{7x^2}$					
(c)	$\frac{50x^2 + 5x}{5x}$					

15. Simplify the following expressions.

(a)
$$\frac{3x(5x+4)+6x(5x+3)}{5x}$$
 (b) $\frac{14x^2-28x}{7x} + \frac{24x-18x^2}{3x}$

8.6 Products and squares of binomials

How can we obtain the expanded form of (x + 2)(x + 3)?

In order to expand (x + 2)(x + 3), you can first keep (x + 2) it is, and apply the distributive property:

$$(x + 2)(x + 3)$$
= $(x + 2)x + (x + 2)3$
= $x^2 + 2x + 3x + 6$
= $x^2 + 5x + 6$

1. Describe how can you check whether (x + 2)(x + 3) is actually equivalent to $x^2 + 5x + 6$.

To expand (x - y)(x + 3y) it can be written as (x - y)x + (x - y)3y and the two parts can then be expanded.

$$(x - y)(x + 3y)$$
= $(x - y)x + (x - y)3y$
= $x^2 - xy + 3xy - 3y^2$
= $x^2 + 2xy - 3y^2$

2. Do some calculations to check whether (x - y)(x + 3y) and $x^2 + 2xy - 3y^2$ are equivalent. Write the results of your calculations in the table below.

X			
у			

3. Expand each of these expressions.

(a)	$(x \cdot$	+3)	(x)	+	4
(/	(,	(-/

(c) (x+3)(x-5)

(b)
$$(x+3)(4-x)$$

(d) $(2x^2 + 1)(3x - 4)$

• • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • •
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • •

(e)
$$(x+y)(x+2y)$$
 (f) $(a-b)(2a+3b)$

(g)
$$(k^2 + m)(k^2 + 2m)$$
 (h) $(2x + 3)(2x - 3)$

(i) (5x+2)(5x-2) (j) (ax-by)(ax+by)

••••••

4. Expand each of these expressions.

(a)
$$(a+b)(a+b)$$

(b)
$$(a - b)(a - b)$$

.....

	(c) $(x+y)(x+y)$	(d) $(x-y)(x-y)$
	(e) $(2a+3b)(2a+3b)$	(f) $(2a-3b)(2a-3b)$
	(g) $(5x + 2y)(5x + 2y)$	(h) $(5x - 2y)(5x - 2y)$
	(i) $(ax + b)(ax + b)$	(j) $(ax - b)(ax - b)$
	•••••••	••••••
5.	Can you guess the answer to each of the fas you did in question 3? Try them out an Expand these expressions:	following questions without working it out and then check your answers.
	(a) $(m+n)(m+n)$	(b) $(m-n)(m-n)$
	(c) $(3x + 2y)(3x + 2y)$	(d) $(3x-2y)(3x-2y)$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	••••••
	All the expressions in questions 4 and 5 a of binomials , for example $(ax + b)^2$ and	-
6.	Expand:	
	(a) $(ax + b)^2$	(b) $(ax - b)^2$
	(c) $(2s+5)^2$	(d) $(2s-5)^2$
	(e) $(ax + by)^2$	(f) $(ax - by)^2$
	(g) $(2s + 5r)^2$	(h) $(2s - 5r)^2$
	••••••	•••••••••••
7.	Expand and simplify.	

141

CHAPTER 8: ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS

(a) (4x+3)(6x+4) + (3x+2)(8x+5)

(b) (4x+3)(6x+4) - (3x+2)(8x+5)

8.7 Substitution into algebraic expressions

1. In question 2 you have to find the values of different expressions, for some given values of *x*. Look carefully at the different expressions in the table. Do you think some of them may be equivalent?

Simplify the longer expression to check whether you end up with the shorter expression.

2. Complete the table.

	x	13	-13	2,5	10
(a)	(2x+3)(3x-5)				
(b)	$10x^2 + 5x - 7 + 3x^2 - 4x - 3$				
(c)	$3(10x^2 - 5x + 2) - 5x(6x - 4)$				
(d)	$13x^2 + x - 10$				
(e)	$6x^2 - x - 15$				
(f)	5x + 6				

3. Complete this table.

	x	1	2	3	4
(a)	(2x+3)(5x-3) + (10x+9)(1-x)				
(b)	$\frac{9x^2 + 30x}{3x}$				
(c)	3x(10x - 5) - 5x(6x - 4)				
(d)	5x(4x+3) - 2x(7+13x) + 2x(3x+2)				

4. Describe any patterns that you observe in your answers for question 3.

.....

5. Complete this table.

	x	1,5	2,5	3,5	4,5
(a)	(2x+3)(5x-3) + (10x+9)(1-x)				
(b)	$\frac{9x^2 + 30x}{3x}$				
(c)	3x(10x - 5) - 5x(6x - 4)				
(d)	5x(4x+3) - 2x(7+13x) + 2x(3x+2)				

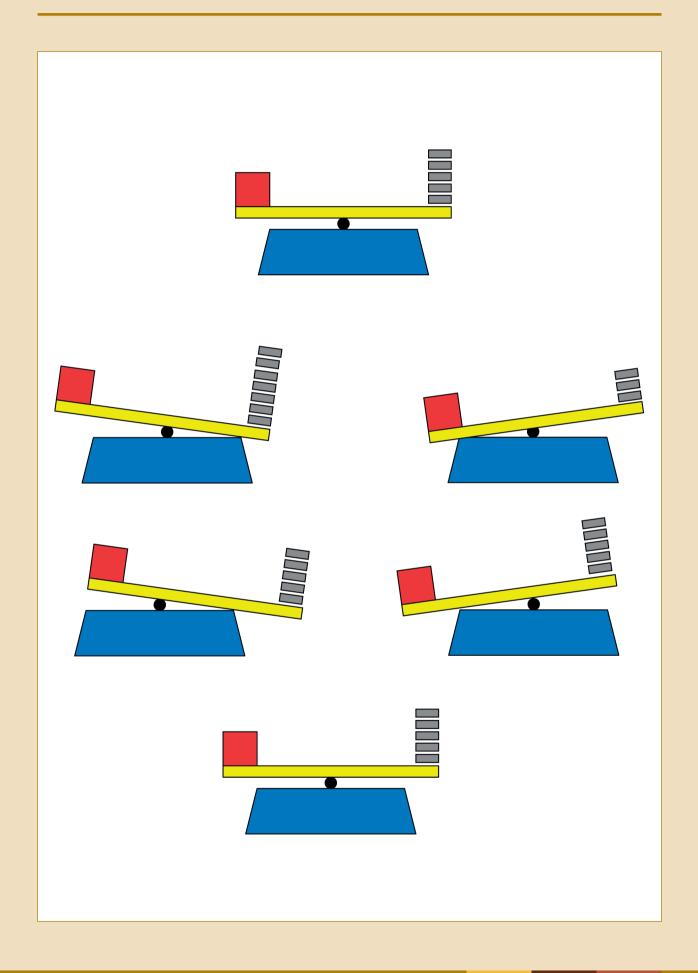
CHAPTER 9 Equations

In this chapter, you will find numbers that make statements true. This is called solution of equations. You will solve equations in two different ways, by inspection and by 'reversing' them.

You will find that two equations can have the same solution. Such equations are called equivalent equations. You will also discover that not all statements are algebraic equations. Some statements are algebraic identities and others are in fact algebraic impossibilities. You will learn what the difference is between these three types of statements.

9.1	Solving equations by inspection	145
9.2	Solving equations using additive and multiplicative inverses	146
9.3	Setting up equations	148
9.4	Equations and situations	151
9.5	Solving equations by using the laws of exponents	153

CHAPTER 9: EQUATIONS 143



Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 144 2014/07/03 10:59:51 AM

9 Equations

9.1 Solving equations by inspection

1. Six equations are listed below the table. Use the table to find out for which of the given values of *x* it will be true that the left-hand side of the equation is equal to the right-hand side.

"Searching" for the solution of an equation by using tables is called **solution by inspection**.

X	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3	4
2x + 3	-3	-1	1	3	5	7	9	11
<i>x</i> + 4	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9 – <i>x</i>	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5
3x-2	-11	-8	-5	-2	1	4	7	10
10x - 7	-37	-27	-17	-7	3	13	23	33
5x + 3	-12	-7	-2	3	8	13	18	23
10 - 3x	19	16	13	10	7	4	1	-2

(a)
$$2x + 3 = 5x + 3$$

(b)
$$5x + 3 = 9 - x$$

(c)
$$2x + 3 = x + 4$$

(d)
$$10x - 7 = 5x + 3$$

(e)
$$3x - 2 = x + 4$$

(f)
$$9 - x = 2x + 3$$

Two equations can have the same solution. For example, 5x = 10 and x + 2 = 4 have the same solution; x = 2 is the solution for both equations.

Two equations are called **equivalent** if they have the same solution.

2. Which of the equations in question 1 have the same solutions? Explain.

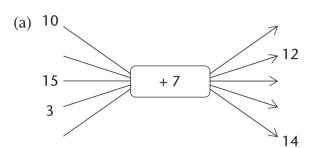
9.2 Solving equations using additive and multiplicative inverses

1. In each case find the value of *x*:

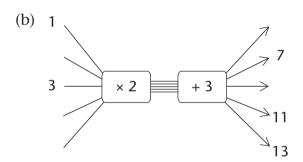
(a) $x \longrightarrow 10$

(b) <i>x</i> —	× 2	+ 3	\longrightarrow 13

2. Complete the flow diagrams. You have to fill in all the missing numbers.



To find the second input number you may say to yourself, "After I added 7, I had 12. What did I have before I added 7?"

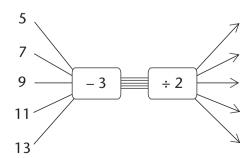


To find the input number that corresponds to 13, you may ask yourself, "What did I have before I added 3?" and then, "What did I have before I multiplied by 2?"

- 3. Use your answers for question 2 to check your answers for question 1.
- 4. Describe the instructions in flow diagram 2(b) in words, and also with a symbolic expression.

.....

5. Complete the flow diagram.



This flow diagram is called the **inverse** of the flow diagram in question 2(b).

6.	Compare the input numbers and the output numbers of the flow diagrams in question 2(b) and question 5. What do you notice?						
	•••••						
	•••••						
7.	(a) Add 5 to any number and then subtra	act 5 from your answer. What do you get?					
		divide the answer by 10. What do you get?					
Th	If you add a number and then subtract the number, you are back where you started, why addition and subtraction are called i operations . If you multiply by a number and then do same number, you are back where you startly why multiplication and division are called operations . The expression $5x - 3$ says "multiply by 5 them."	This is nverse ivide by the orted. This is dinverse					
giv	The equation $5x - 3$ says multiply by 3 then yen with a flow diagram: $-x + 5$ $-x + 6$ $-x$	\rightarrow					
8.	write a flow diagram to help you to see th						
	(a) $2x + 5 = 23$	(b) $3x - 5 = 16$					
	••••••	••••••					
	(c) $5x - 60 = -5$	(d) $\frac{1}{3}x + 11 = 19$					
		•••••					
	(e) $10(x+3) = 88$	(f) $2(x-13) = 14$					
		•••••					
		•••••					

9.3 Setting up equations

CONSTRUCTING EQUATIONS

You can easily make an equation that has 5 as the solution. Here is an example:

Start by writing the solution x = 5

Add 3 to both sides x + 3 = 8

Multiply both sides by 5 5x + 15 = 40

1. What is the solution of the equation 5x + 15 = 40?

2. Make your own equation with the solution x = 3.

•••••

3. Bongile worked like this to make the equation 2(x + 8) = 30, but he rubbed out part of his work:

Start by writing the solution x =

Add 8 to both sides = 15

Multiply both sides by 2 2(x+8) = 30

Complete Bongile's writing to solve the equation 2(x + 8) = 30.

4. This is how Bongile made a more difficult equation:

Start by writing the solution x =

Multiply by 3 on both sides 3x =

Subtract 9 from both sides 3x - 9 = 6

Add 2x to both sides 5x - 9 = 2x + 6

(a) What was on the right-hand side before Bongile subtracted 9?.....

(b) What is the solution of 5x - 9 = 2x + 6?....

5. Bongile started with a solution and he ended up with an equation. Fill in the steps that Bongile took to make the equation, and solve the equation:

$$x =$$

$$8x =$$

$$8x + 3 =$$

$$3x + 3 = 35 - 5x$$

SOLVING EQUATIONS

To make an equation, you can apply the same operation on both sides

> Multiply by 8 Add 3 Subtract 5*x*

x = 48x = 328x + 3 = 353x + 3 = 35 - 5x To solve an equation, you can apply the inverse operation on both sides

Divide by 8 Subtract 3 Add 5x

Use any appropriate method to solve the equations below.

1. (a)
$$5x + 3 = 24 - 2x$$

(b)
$$2x + 4 = -9$$

(b) 2x + 4 = -9(c) 3 - x = x - 3(d) 6(2x + 1) = 0(b) 8(1-3x) = 5(4x+6)

2. (a)
$$4(1-2x) = 12-7x$$

(c)
$$7x - 10 = 3x + 7$$

(d)
$$1,6x + 7 = 3,5x + 3,2$$

NUMBER PATTERNS AND EQUATIONS

1.	(a)	Which of the following rules will produce the number pattern given in the
		second row of the table below?

- A. Term value = 8n where n is the term number
- B. Term value = 6n 1 where n is the term number
- C. Term value = 6n + 2 where n is the term number
- D. Term value = 10n 2 where n is the term number
- E. Term value = 5n + 3 where *n* is the term number

Term number 3 1 2 4 5 6 7 8 Term value 8 13 18 23 28 33 38 43 48

(b) The sixth term of the sequence has the value 33. Which term will have the value 143? You may set up and solve an equation to find out.

.....

(c) Apply rule E to your answer, to check whether your answer is correct.

2. (a) Write the rule that will produce the number pattern in the second row of this table. You may have to experiment to find out what the rule is.

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Term value	5	8	11	14	17	20	23	26	29

•••••

(b) Which term will have the value 221?

3. The rule for number pattern A is 4n + 11, and the rule for pattern B is 7n - 34.

 $(a) \quad Complete \ the \ table \ below \ for \ the \ two \ patterns.$

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Pattern A									
Pattern B									

(b) For which value of n are the terms of the two patterns equal?

9.4 Equation and situations

1.	Consider this situation:
	To rent a room in a certain building, you have to pay a deposit of R400 and then R80 per day.
	(a) How much money do you need to rent the room for 10 days?
	(b) How much money do you need to rent the room for 15 days?
	••••••
2.	Which of the following best describes the method that you used to do question 1(a) and (b)?
	A. Total $cost = R400 + R80$
	B. Total $cost = 400$ (number of days + 80)
	C. Total cost = $80 \times \text{number of days} + 400$
	D. Total cost = $(80 + 400) \times \text{number of days}$
3.	For how many days can you rent the room described in question 1, if you have R2 800 to pay?
	••••••
	•••••
-	you want to know for how many days you can rent the room if you have R720, you can up an equation and solve it:
	You know the total cost is R720 and you know that you can work out the total cost e this:
,	Total cost = $80x + 400$, where x is the number of days. So, $80x + 400 = 720$ and $x = 4$ days.
	each of the following cases, find the unknown number by setting up an equation and lving it.
4.	To rent a certain room, you have to pay a deposit of R300 and then R120 per day. (a) For how many days can you rent the room if you can pay a total of R1 740? (If you experience trouble in setting up the equation, it may help you to decide first how you will work out what it will cost to rent the room for 6 days.)
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 151 2014/07/03 10:59:52 AM

	(b) What will it cost to rent the room for 10 days, 11 days and 12 days?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(c) For how many days can you rent the room if you have R3 300 available?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(d) For how many days can you rent the room if you have R3 000 available?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••
5.	Ben and Thabo decide to do some calculations with a certain number. Ben multiplies the number by 5 and adds 12. Thabo gets the same answer as Ben when he multiplies the number by 9 and subtracts 16. What is the number they worked with?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
6.	The cost of renting a certain car for a period of <i>x</i> days can be calculated with the following formula:
	Rental cost in rand = $260x + 310$
	What information about renting this car will you get, if you solve the equation $260x + 310 = 2910$?
	••••••
	••••••
7.	Sarah paid a deposit of R320 for a stall at a market, and she also pays R70 per day rental for the stall. She sells fruit and vegetables at the stall, and finds that she makes about R150 profit each day. After how many days will she have earned as much as she has paid for the stall, in total?

Solving equations by using the laws of exponents 9.5

You may need to look back at Chapter 5 to remember the laws of exponents.

One kind of exponential equation that you deal with in Grade 9 has one or more terms with a base that is raised to a power containing a variable.

Example: $2^{x} = 16$

When we need to find the unknown value, we are asking the question: "To what power must the base be raised for the statement to be true?"

Example: $2^{x} = 16$	Make sure that the terms with <i>x</i> are on their own on	one side.
Example: $2^x = 16$	Make sure that the terms with x are on their own on	one side.

$$2^x = 2^4$$
 Write the known term in the same base as the term with the exponent.

$$x = 4$$
 Equate the exponents.

In the example above, we can equate the exponents because the two numbers are equal only when they are raised to the same power.

1. Solve for *x*:

(a)
$$5^{x-1} = 125$$
 (b) $2^{x+3} = 8$

(c)
$$10^x = 10\,000$$
 (d) $4^{x+2} = 64$

(e)
$$7^{x+1} = 1$$
 (f) $x^0 = 1$

Example: Solve for *x*: $3^x = \frac{1}{27}$

$$3^x = 3^{-1}$$

(Rewrite $\frac{1}{27}$ as a number to base 3)

$$x = -3$$

(Equate the exponents.)

2. Solve for x.

(a)
$$7^x = \frac{1}{49}$$

(b)
$$10^x = 0,001$$

......

•••••

••••••

•••••

(c)
$$6^x = \frac{1}{216}$$

(d)
$$10^{x-1} = 0.001$$

•••••

•••••

(e) $4^{-x} = \frac{1}{16}$

(f) $7^x = 7^{-3}$

(e) $4 = \frac{1}{16}$

.....

•••••

In another kind of equation involving exponents, the variable is in the base.

When we need to find the unknown value, we are asking the question: "Which number must be raised to the given power for the statement to be true?"

For these equations, you should remember what you know about the powers of numbers such as 2, 3, 4, 5 and 10.

SOLVING EQUATIONS WITH A VARIABLE IN THE BASE

1. Complete the table below and answer the questions that follow:

	х	2	3	4	5
(a)	χ^3	$2^3 = 8$			
(b)	<i>x</i> ⁵	$2^5 = 32$			
(c)	χ^4	$2^4 = 16$			

For what value of *x* is:

(a)
$$x^3 = 64$$

(b)
$$x^5 = 32$$

(b)
$$x^5 = 32$$
 (c) $x^4 = 256$

(d)
$$x^3 = 8$$

(e)
$$x^4 = 16$$

(f)
$$x^5 = 3125$$

2. Solve for *x* and give a reason:

(a)
$$x^3 = 216$$

(b)
$$x^2 = 324$$

(c) $x^4 = 10000$

(d)
$$8^x = 512$$

(e) $18^x = 324$

(f)
$$6^x = 216$$

WORKSHEET

1.	Ahmed multiplied a number by 5, added number he started with. The answer wa	d 3 to the answer, and then subtracted the as 11. What number did he start with?
	•••••	
	••••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
2.	Use any appropriate method to solve t	he equations.
	(a) $3(x-2) = 4(x+1)$	(b) $5(x+2) = -3(2-x)$
	••••••••••••	•••••••••••
	••••••••••••	••••••••••
	••••••••••••	•••••••••••
	(c) $1.5x = 0.7x - 24$	(d) $5(x+3) = 5x + 12$
	••••••	••••••••••
		•••••••••••
	(e) $2.5x = 0.5(x + 10)$	(f) $7(x-2) = 7(2-x)$
	••••••••	•••••••
	••••••••	••••••••
	$(9) \frac{1}{2}(2x - 3) = 5$	(h) $2x - 3(3 + x) = 5x + 9$
	$\frac{(g)}{2} = \frac{(2x - 3)}{2} = 3$	(ii) $2x - 3(3+x) - 3x + 3$
		••••••••••
		•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

EQUATIONS

TERM 1 Revision and assessment

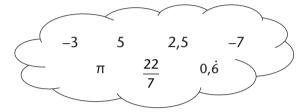
Re	evision	158
•	Whole numbers	158
•	Integers	160
•	Fractions	161
•	The decimal notation for fractions	161
•	Exponents	162
•	Patterns	163
•	Functions and relationships	165
•	Algebraic expressions	167
•	Equations	169
Δ¢	ssessment	170

Revision

Remember to show all the steps in your working.

WHOLE NUMBERS

1. Write all the numbers from the cloud in the table below, and place a tick in <u>all</u> the column(s) of the type of numbers they are. The first number has been completed for you:



Number	Number system						
value	Real numbers	Natural numbers	Integers	Rational numbers	Irrational numbers		
-3	1		✓	✓			

2. The Ndlovu family is travelling to the Kruger National Park on holiday. Here is a summary of their journey:

Time	Odometer reading (km)	Description
06:12	123 564	Leave home
08:32	123 785	Stop for breakfast and petrol
09:18	123 785	Leave petrol station
11:34	124 011	Stop for toilet break
11:51	124 011	Leave petrol station
13:32	124 175	Reach Kruger gate

(a)	Calculate the length of time the journey took, in hours. Give your answer as
	mixed number.

•••••

	(b) Calculate the average speed of the journey, correct to one decimal place.
	•••••
3.	A car travelling at an average speed of 110 km/h takes $2\frac{1}{4}$ hours to complete a journey. If the return journey needs to be completed in 2 hours, calculate the average speed that must be maintained.
4.	If four tins of bully beef cost R75,80, how much money would seven similar tins cost?
	••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
5.	A farmer has enough chicken feed to feed 300 hens for 20 days. If he buys 100 more hens, how long would the same amount of chicken feed last before it runs out?
6.	How long will it take R5 000 invested at 7,2% simple interest p.a. to grow to R5 900?
	•••••
7.	Chardonnay wishes to buy a new TV set costing R7 499. She does not have enough money and so needs to buy it on hire purchase. The store requires a 10% deposit and then equal monthly payments of Rx for 2 years. If the simple interest charged on the account is 15%, calculate the value of x .
	•••••
	•••••
	•••••
	•••••
8.	How much interest will Tebogo get on R12 500 deposited for 21 months in a bank account that provides 5,3% compound interest per annum?
	•••••

TERM 1: REVISION AND ASSESSMENT 159

INTEGERS

All the questions in this section should be answered without using a calculator.

1. Write a number in each box to make the calculations correct:

(b)
$$- = -34$$

2. These questions show sequences of numbers. Fill the correct values in the boxes:

3. This question shows a number line in which the missing number is halfway between the other two numbers. Fill the correct value into the box:



4. Calculate the following:

(a)
$$28 - (-15)$$

(b)
$$(-5)(12)(-7)$$

(c) $5 + 5 \times -6$

(d)
$$\frac{(\sqrt{81})(-2)^3}{-(-3)^2}$$

.....

.....

(e)
$$\frac{(-3)^2 \sqrt[3]{216}}{(-9)(-3)}$$

••••••

5. Augustus ruled the Roman Empire from 27 BC to AD 14. For how many years did he rule?

.....

.....

FRACTIONS

All the questions in this section should be answered without using a calculator.

1. Simplify the following:

(a)
$$\sqrt{\frac{36}{81}x^8}$$

(b)
$$\frac{5}{2}x^2 - \frac{5}{4}x^2$$

(c) $(\frac{3}{4}xy^3)(\frac{4}{9}y)$

•••••

2. Simplify the following:

(a)
$$\frac{4x^{10}}{8x^5}$$

(b)
$$\frac{5}{x} - \frac{1}{x}$$

•••••••••••••••••••••••••

(c) $\frac{5x}{6y^2} \times \frac{3y}{15x}$

(d)
$$\frac{x+2}{4z^2} \div \frac{4(x+2)}{2z^3}$$

THE DECIMAL NOTATION FOR FRACTIONS

All the questions in this section should be answered without using a calculator.

1. Calculate the following:

(a)
$$27,49 - 6,99$$

(b)
$$0.03 \times 1.4$$

(c)
$$1,44 \div 0,012$$

.....

2. Simplify the following:

(a)
$$\sqrt{0.04x^{16}}$$

(b)
$$3.5x^2 - 4.6x^2$$

(c)
$$(1,2x^2y^3)(5yx^2)$$

3.	Simplify	the fol	lowing
----	----------	---------	--------

(a)
$$\frac{0.2x^{15}}{0.01x^5}$$

(b)
$$\frac{0,45}{x} - \frac{1,35}{x}$$

(c)
$$\frac{0.5x^3}{4.5y^2} \times \frac{3y}{2.5x}$$

(d)
$$\frac{2,5x^3}{2y^2} \div \frac{0,5x}{0,03y^6}$$

EXPONENTS

All the questions in this section should be answered without using a calculator, unless otherwise specified in the question.

1. Write the following numbers in scientific notation:

2. Write the following number in "normal" notation: $9,45 \times 10^{-5}$.

3. Which of the following numbers is bigger: 4.7×10^{-9} or 5.12×10^{-10} ?

4. Calculate the following, giving your answer in scientific notation:

(a)
$$(5.9 \times 10^6) - (4.7 \times 10^6)$$

(b)
$$(5.9 \times 10^6) + (4.7 \times 10^5)$$

(c)
$$(7.2 \times 10^{-4}) \times (2 \times 10^{2})$$

5.	Calculate the following, giving your answ A calculator may be used:	ver as an ordinary decimal number.
	(a) $(6.3 \times 10^{-4}) - (1.9 \times 10^{-3})$	(b) $(5.8 \times 10^{-7}) \div (8 \times 10^{-11})$
	•••••	••••••
6.	Simplify the following, leaving all answer	rs with positive exponents:
•	(a) 3^{-2}	(b) $2^7 \times 6^{-3} \times 3^2$
	(c) $\frac{2y^{-3}}{v^3}$	(d) $(2x^6)^{-3}$
	•••••	••••••
	(e) $(2x^7)(2,5x^{-8})$	(f) $(-3a^2bc)^2(-5ac^{-2})$
	(g) $\frac{(2d^2e)^2}{(4d^{-3}e^2)^{-1}}$	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••	
7.	Solve the following equations:	
	(a) $3 \times 3^x = 81$	(b) $2^{x+1} = 0.125$
	•••••	•••••••••••
	(c) $4^x + 10 = 74$	••••••
	•••••	
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
P	ATTERNS	
1.	Create a sequence that fits this description successive term is obtained by squaring the Write down the first four terms of your creater than the sequence of	ne previous term and then subtracting 10.
	••••••••••	••••••

2.	For each of the following sequences, (i) write in words the rule that describes the
	relationship between the terms in the sequence, and (ii) use the rule to extend the
	sequence by three more terms:

(a)	-5; -	-2;	10;	-20;	
(4)	υ,	-,	- 0,	_∵,	• •

each of the sequences:

(b)
$$-4.5$$
; -6.25 ; -8 ; ...

••••••	•••••
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	•••••

3. In this question you are given the rule by which each term of the sequence can be found. In all cases, n is the position of the term. Determine the first three terms of

(2)	2	5 v
(a)	.) –)[

(b)
$$2n^2 - 3n + 1$$

 •

4. (a) Write down the rule by which each term of the sequence can be found (in a similar format to those given in question 3, where n is the position of the term): -15; -12; -9; ...

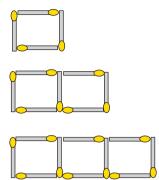
.....

(b) Use this rule to find the value of the 150th term of the sequence.

5. Determine the pattern and then write the missing values in the table below:

Position in sequence	1	2	3	4	5	10	
Value of the term	2	5	10	17			226

6. The picture below shows a pattern created by matchsticks.



(a) Draw your own series of matchstick patterns in which there is a <u>common</u> <u>difference</u> between each pattern. It must be different to all the matchstick patterns shown in Chapter 6 and this chapter, and should contain the first <u>three</u> matchstick patterns in the series.

(b) Write in words the rule that describes the number of matchsticks needed for each new pattern.

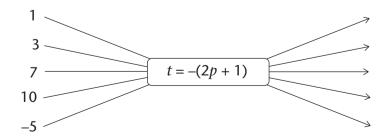
••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

(c) Use the rule to determine the missing values in the table below, and fill them in:

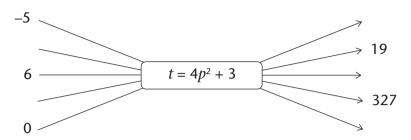
Number of the pattern	4	5	6	7	50
Number of matches needed					

FUNCTIONS AND RELATIONSHIPS

1. (a) Use the given formula to calculate the values of *t*, given the values of *p*:



(b) Use the given formula to calculate the missing input values, p, and output values, t.

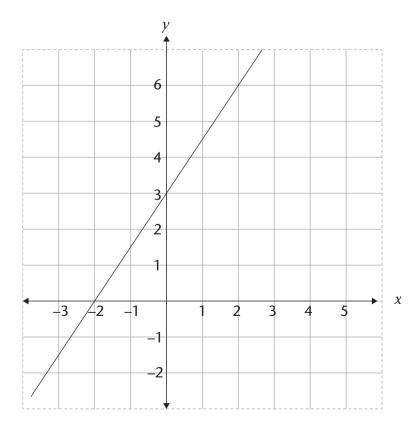


2. Consider the values in the table below:

х	-2	-1	0	1	4	12	
у	-4	-1	2	5			65

(a) Write, as an algebraic formula, the rule for finding the *y*-values in the table. The formula is in the form y = ax + b, where *a* and *b* are integers.

- (b) Use the rule to determine the missing values in the table, and fill them in.
- 3. Consider the graph shown below:

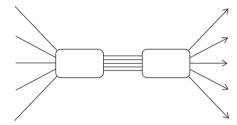


(a) Complete the following table by reading off the coordinates of points on the graph:

Х	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
у						

(b) Write down an algebraic formula for the graph, in the form y = ...

(c) Complete the flow diagram below to represent the relationship shown on the graph:



ALGEBRAIC EXPRESSIONS

1.	Simplify	as far a	as possible:
----	----------	----------	--------------

(a) $(2x^2 - 4x^2)$

.....

(b)
$$-2x^2(5x^3 - 3x^2 + 2x - 5)$$

(c)
$$(4b^2 - 7b^2)(5b^{-2} + 3b^{-1} - 7)$$

•••••

	(d) $\frac{18x^2 - 12x + 2}{6x}$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	••••••
	(e) $(2x+5)(3x-1)$
	••••••
	(f) $(4a-3)^2$
	(g) $\frac{6x^3 - 2(3x)(4x) + x}{4x^2}$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
2.	Simplify as far as possible: (a) $4(a-2b) - 5(3b+a)$
	(b) $5 + 2(x^2 + 5x + 3)$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(c) $3x(2x^2 - 3x + 4) - 3(5 - 2x)$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(d) $(a+3b-2c)-(4a+b-c)-(2b-c+3a)$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(e) $4(3x^2 + x - 2) - (x + 3)^2$
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

EQUATIONS

	201110110								
1.	Solve the following equations:								
	(a) $4 - 3x = -2$	(b) $4(2x-1) = -8$							
	•••••	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••							
	•••••								
	•••••	••••••••••••							
	(c) $2x + 1 = 3(2x - 1)$	(d) $(x+2)(x-4) = x^2 + 5x - 1$							
	•••••	••••••							
	•••••	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••							
	•••••	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••							
2.	(a) Write this information in an equatio								
	(b) Solve the equation to find Tshilidzi's	age.							
	•••••								
3.	The base of a triangle is $(1,5x + 6)$ cm and the height is 4 cm. The area of the triangle is 24 cm^2 .								
	(a) Write this information in an equatio	n in x.							
	(b) Solve the equation to determine the	value of <i>x</i> .							
	•••••	•••••							
	•••••								
	(c) What is the length of the base of the triangle?								
	•••••								
	•••••	•••••							
1.	Solve for <i>x</i> :								
	(a) $3^x = 9$	(b) $2^{x+1} = 16$							
	•••••	••••••							
	•••••	•••••••••••							

Assessment

In this section, the numbers in brackets at the end of a question indicate the number of marks the question is worth. Use this information to help you determine how much working is needed. The total number of marks allocated to the assessment is 75.

1. Gareth completed the following number classification:

	Number	Number system								
	value	Real numbers	Natural numbers	Integers	Rational numbers	Irrational numbers				
	-1,5	✓		✓	✓					
	$\sqrt{2}$	1			1					

(a) Gareth has made some errors. Complete the following table by putting the ticks in the correct boxes: (2)

Number	Number system								
value	Real numbers	Natural numbers	Integers	Rational numbers	Irrational numbers				
-1,5									
$\sqrt{2}$									

	(b)	Explain why you have made the changes you have.	(2)
	• • • •		. •
	• • •		•
2.	init	to invested R1 500 for 2 years in a bank account. At the end of this period, the ial investment had grown to R1 717,50. What simple interest rate did the bank him? (Assume that the rate remained unchanged for the entire period.) Give	
	you	r answer as a percentage.	(3)
	• • • •		. •
	• • •		. •
	• • •		, .

3.	A Benthian changed 2 500 Bendollars to Darsek when he visited the Klingon Empland received 2 000 Darsek after the 3% commission had been charged. Determine Bendollars: Dasek exchange rate and then copy and complete the following senter "1 Klingon Darsek = Bendollars". The missing value should be written correct three decimal places.	the
	•••••	• • •
	•••••	
4.	What is the difference in height between the highest point on the Earth's surface (Mt Everest: 8 848 m <u>above</u> sea level) and the deepest point of the sea (the bottom of the Marianas Trench, 10 994 m <u>below</u> sea level)?	(1)
	•••••	• • •
	•••••	
5.	Write down two numbers that subtract to give an answer of 21. One of the number must be positive and the other negative.	rs (2)
	•••••	• • •
6.	(a) What is the value of $(-1)^{1000001}$?	(1)
	(b) Explain how you can know the answer in (a) without needing a calculator.	(1)
	••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
7.	Simplify the following, without using a calculator. Show all steps of your working: (a) $\frac{5}{2}x - \frac{11}{4}x + 1{,}125x$	
	••••••	• • •
	(b) $\sqrt[3]{\frac{0.027x^7}{216x}}$	(4)
	•••••	• • •
	(c) $\frac{0.4x}{10} \times \frac{20x}{0.03} \div \frac{8x^2}{5}$	(4)
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • •



.....

8. The diameter of a carbon atom is 0,00000000154 metres. Write this in scientific

notation. (2)

.....

9. Simplify the following, leaving all answers with positive exponents:

(a)
$$3^{-9} \times 3^4$$

(b)
$$\frac{(3d^3e^2)^3}{(2d^{-4}e)^{-1}}$$
 (5)

.....

10. Solve for x: $9^{2x-3} = 3^x$ (3)

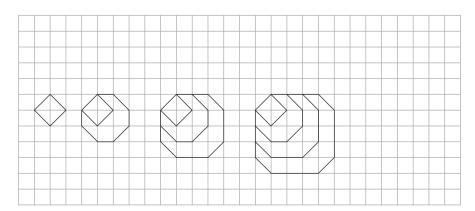
•••••

11. Consider the following sequence: 6 000; -1 500; 375; ...

(a) Extend the sequence by two more terms. (2)

(b) Is this the correct rule for the sequence (where n is the position of the term in the sequence): $6\ 000(0.25)^{n-1}$? Explain your answer. (2)

12. The following figure shows a pattern created by matchsticks.



(a) Draw the 5th diagram in the pattern alongside the picture above. (2)(b) The first two terms in the sequence created by the number of matchsticks in each pattern is 4; 11. Write down the next three terms in the sequence. (2) (c) Write in words the rule that describes the relationship between the terms in the sequence. (2)13. Consider the values in the table below: -2-1 0 1 5 16 χ

- (a) Write the rule for finding the *y*-values in the table as an algebraic formula. (2) (Hint: Look at the cubes of the numbers.)
- (b) Use the rule to determine the missing values in the table, and fill them in. (3)
- 14. Consider the following graph:

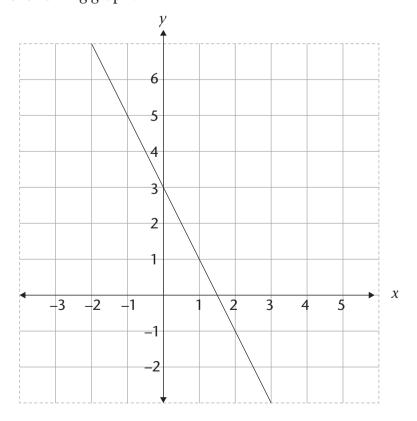
-10

y

-3

-2

-1



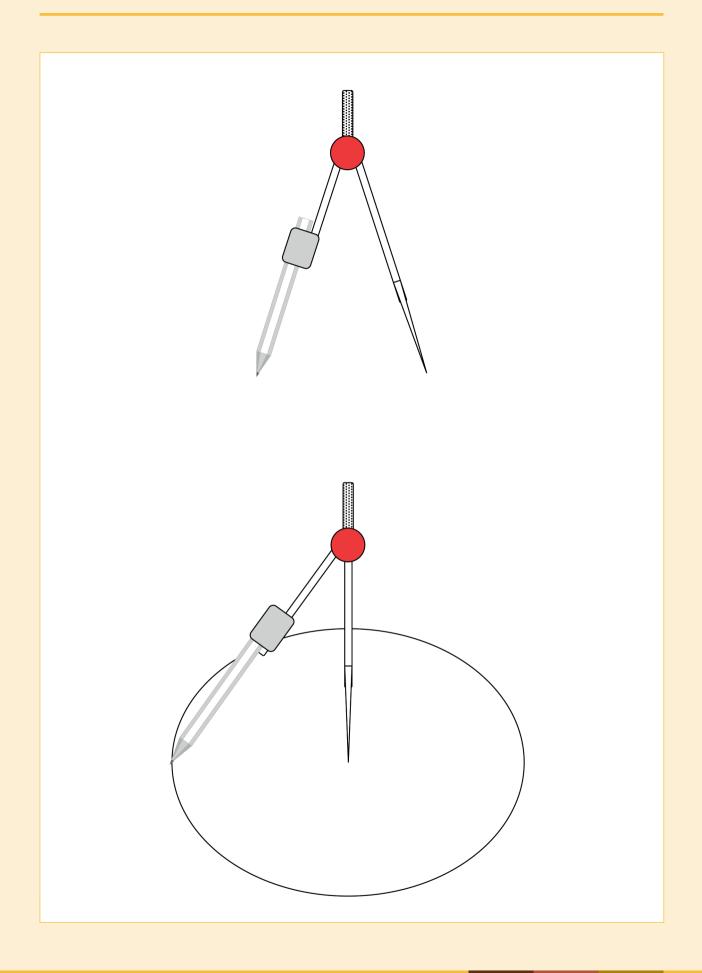
7 998

(Complete the following table by reading off the coordinates of points on the graph:										(2)
		the gra	арп:							_		(2)
		X	_	-2	-1	0	1	2	3			
		у										
((b)	Write	down	an	algebra	aic form	ula for t	he grap	h in the	form $y =$		(2)
•	• • •	• • • • •		• • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
•	•••	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
15.5	Simj	plify:										
((a)	$\frac{15+x-5}{5x^2}$	$\frac{-5x^2}{2}$									(3)
•	•••	• • • • •	• • • •	• • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
•	(b)	(3x+1)	(3x - 1)	- 1)	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	· • • • • • • • • •	(2)
•	•••	• • • • •								• • • • • • • •		
•		• • • • •		• • • •	• • • • •					• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • •	
((c)	4 – 3(2	2x + 3)2								(3)
•	• • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
•	• • •	• • • • •		• • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
				0	equatio							
((a)	$x^2 + 5x$	· – 1–	x^{2} –	<i>x</i> + 3 =	3(x-4)						(4)
•	• • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
•	• • •	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
((b)				- 1)(-2)		• • • • • •	•••••	• • • • • •	• • • • • • • •		(4)
•	• • •	• • • • •	• • • •	• • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •
•	•••	• • • • •	• • • • •	• • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • •	• • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • •	• • • • • •

CHAPTER 10 **Construction of geometric** figures

This chapter revises the construction of geometric figures using only a compass and a ruler. You will revise and further explore constructions such as perpendicular lines, angle bisectors and special angles, because these constructions can help you to understand other constructions and properties of 2D shapes. You will investigate the relationships between angles inside and outside of a triangle, as well as congruency of triangles. Furthermore, you will find out about the diagonals of quadrilaterals, and the interior angles of different polygons.

10.1	Constructing perpendicular lines	177
10.2	Bisecting angles	180
10.3	Constructing special angles without a protractor	182
10.4	Angle bisectors in triangles	184
10.5	Interior and exterior angles in triangles	185
10.6	Constructing congruent triangles	187
10.7	Diagonals of quadrilaterals	192
10.8	Angles in polygons	195



Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 176 2014/07/03 11:00:05 AM

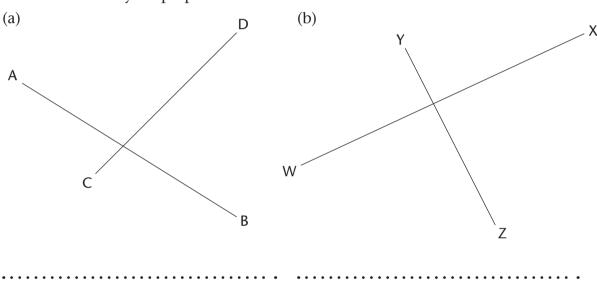
10 Construction of geometric figures

10.1 Constructing perpendicular lines

REVISING PERPENDICULAR LINES

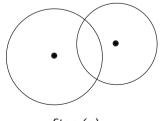
In Grade 8, you learnt about **perpendicular lines**.

- 1. What does it mean if we say 'two lines are perpendicular'?
- 2. Use your protractor to measure the angles between the following pairs of lines. Then state whether they are perpendicular or not.

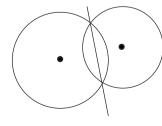


LINES THAT FORM WHEN CIRCLES INTERSECT

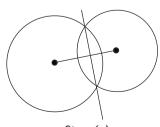
- 1. Do the following in your exercise book:
 - (a) Use a compass to draw two overlapping circles of different sizes.
 - (b) Draw a line through the points where the circles intersect (overlap).
 - (c) Draw a line to join the centres of the circles.



Step (a)



Step (b)



Step (c)

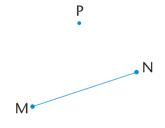
	(d) Use your protractor to measure the angles between the intersecting lines
	(e) What can you say about the intersecting lines?
2.	Repeat questions 1(a) to (e) with circles that are the same size.
3.	What conclusion can you make about a line drawn between the intersection points of two overlapping circles and a line through their centres?

USING CIRCLES TO CONSTRUCT PERPENDICULAR LINES

Case 1: A perpendicular through a point that is not on the line segment

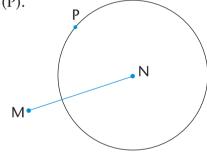
Copy the steps below in your exercise book.

You are given line segment MN with point P at a distance from it. You must construct a line that is perpendicular to MN, so that the perpendicular passes through point P.



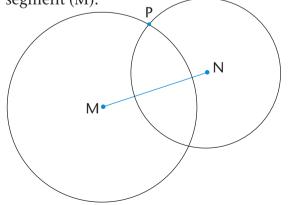
Step 1

Use your compass to draw a circle whose centre is the one end point of the line segment (N) and passes through the point (P).



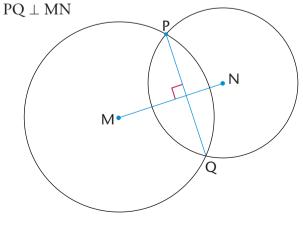
Step 2

Repeat step 1, but make the centre of your circle the other end point of the line segment (M).



Step 3

Join the points where the circles intersect:



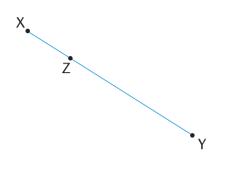
178 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 2

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 178 2014/07/03 11:00:05 AM

Case 2: A perpendicular at a point that is on the line segment

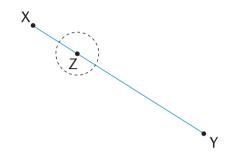
Copy the steps below in your exercise book.

You are given line segment XY with point Z on it. You must construct a perpendicular line passing through Z.



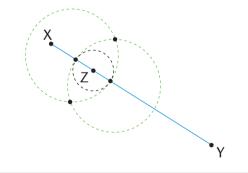
Step 1

Use your compass to draw a circle whose centre is Z. Make its radius smaller than ZX. Note the two points where the circle intersects XY.



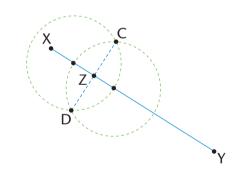
Step 2

Set your compass wider than it was for the circle with centre Z. Draw two circles of the same size whose centres are at the two points where the first (black) circle intersects XY. The two circles (green) will overlap.



Step 3

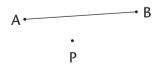
Join the intersection points of the two overlapping circles. Mark these points C and D: CD \perp XY and passes through point Z.



PRACTISE USING CIRCLES TO CONSTRUCT PERPENDICULAR LINES

In each of the following two cases, draw a line that is perpendicular to the segment, and passes through the point P.

1.



2.



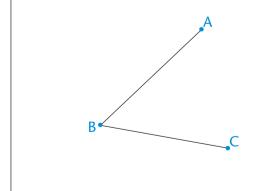
10.2 Bisecting angles

USING CIRCLES TO BISECT ANGLES

Work through the following example of using intersecting circles to **bisect** an angle. Do the steps yourself in your exercise book.

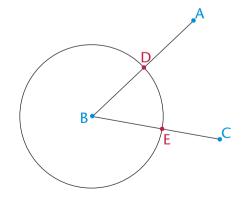
The word **bisect** means 'to cut in half'.

You are given $A\hat{B}C$. You must bisect the angle.



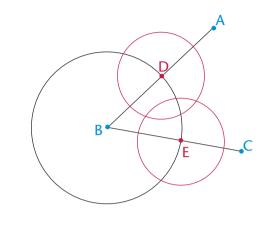
Step 1

Draw a circle with centre B to mark off an equal length on both arms of the angle. Label the points of intersection D and E: DB = BE.



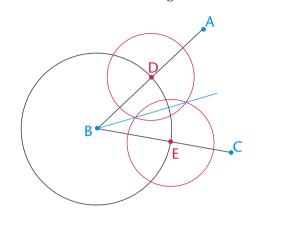
Step 2

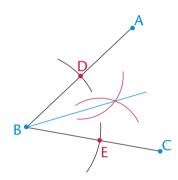
Draw two equal circles with centres at D and at E. Make sure the circles overlap.



Step 3

Draw a line from B through the points where the two equal circles intersect. This line will bisect the angle.





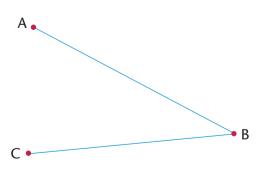
Same construction as in step 3 above

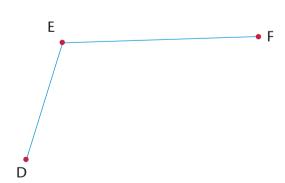
Can you explain why the method above works to bisect an angle?

Can you also see that we need not draw full circles, but can merely use parts of circles (arcs) to do the above construction?

PRACTISE BISECTING ANGLES

Bisect the angles below without using a protractor.





Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 181 2014/07/03 11:00:06 AM

10.3 Constructing special angles without a protractor

Angles of 30°, 45°, 60° and 90° are known as **special angles**. You must be able to construct these angles without using a protractor.

CONSTRUCTING A 45° ANGLE

You have learnt how to draw a 90° angle, and how to bisect an angle, without using a protractor. Use this information to draw a 45° angle at point X on the line below.

Hint: Extend the line to the left of X.

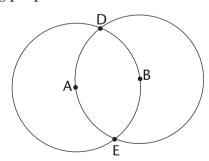


CONSTRUCTING 60° AND 30° ANGLES

- 1. What do you know about the sides and angles in an equilateral triangle?
- 2. In your exercise book, draw two circles with the following properties:
 - The circles are the same size.
 - Each circle passes through the other circle's centre.
 - The centres of the circles are labelled A and B.
 - The points of intersection of the circles are labelled D and E.

An example is shown on the right.

- 3. Draw in the following line segments: AB, AD and DB.
- 4. What can you say about the lengths of AB, AD and DB?



182 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 2

- 5. What kind of triangle is ABD?6. Therefore, what do you know about Â, B̂ and D̂?
- 7. Use your knowledge of bisecting angles to create an angle of 30° on the construction you made in question 2.
- 8. Use what you have learnt above to construct an angle of 60° at point P on the following line segment:



CONSTRUCTING THE MULTIPLES OF SPECIAL ANGLES

1. Complete the table below. The first one has been done for you:

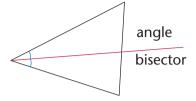
Angle	Multiples below 360°	Angle	Multiples below 360°
30°	30°; 60°; 90°; 120°; 150°; 180°; 210°; 240°; 270°; 300°; 330°	45°	
60°		90°	

2. In your exercise book, construct the following angles without using a protractor. You will need to do more than one construction to create each angle.

- (a) 120°
- (b) 135°
- (c) 270°
- (d) 240°
- (e) 150°

10.4 Angle bisectors in triangles

You learnt how to bisect an angle in Section 10.2. Now you will investigate the angle bisectors in a triangle. An **angle bisector** is a line that cuts an angle in half.



- 1. (a) Bisect each of the angles of the acute triangle below.
 - (b) Extend each of the bisectors to the opposite side of the triangle.
 - (c) What do you notice?

•••••

- 2. (a) Do the same with the obtuse triangle.
 - (b) What do you notice?

.....

3. Compare your triangles with those of two classmates. You should have the same results.

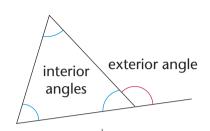
You should have found that the three **angle bisectors** of a triangle **intersect at one point**. This point is the same distance away from each side of the triangle.

10.5 Interior and exterior angles in triangles

WHAT ARE INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR ANGLES?

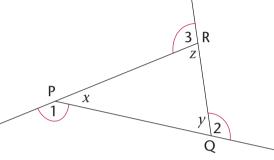
An **interior angle** is an angle that lies between two sides of a triangle. It is inside the triangle. A triangle has three interior angles.

An **exterior angle** is an angle between a side of a triangle and another side that is extended. It is outside the triangle.



Look at Δ PQR. Its three sides are extended to create three exterior angles.

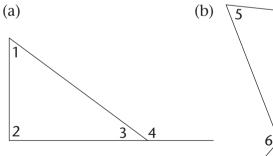
Each exterior angle has one interior adjacent angle (next to it) and two **interior opposite angles**, as described in the following table.

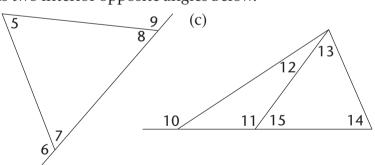


Exterior angle	Interior adjacent angle	Interior opposite angles
1	X	z and y
2	y	x and z
3	Z	x and y

IDENTIFYING EXTERIOR ANGLES AND INTERIOR OPPOSITE ANGLES

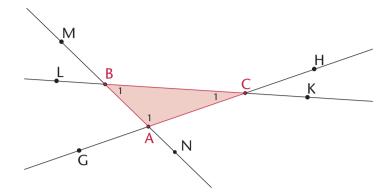
1. Name each exterior angle and its two interior opposite angles below.





Ext. ∠			
Int. opp. ∠s			

2. \triangle ABC below has each side extended in both directions to create six exterior angles.



(b) Since a triangle has three sides that can be extended in both directions, there are two exterior angles at each vertex. Write down the names of all the exterior angles of the triangle.

(c) Explain why M $\hat{B}L$ is not an exterior angle of ΔABC .

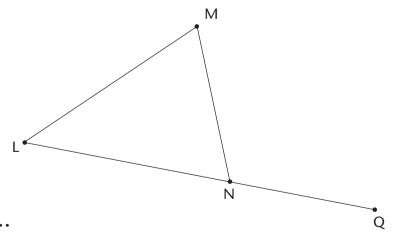
(d) Write down two other angles that are neither interior nor exterior.

•••••

INVESTIGATING THE EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR ANGLES IN A TRIANGLE

1. Consider Δ LMN. Write down the name of the exterior angle......

2. Use a protractor to measure the interior angles and the exterior angle. Write the measurements on the drawing.



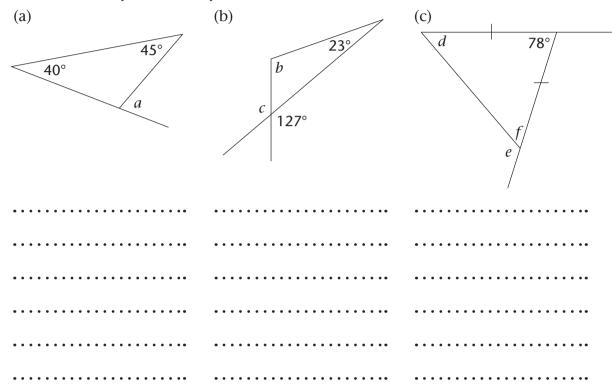
3. Use your findings in question 2 to complete this sum:

 $L\widehat{M}N + M\widehat{L}N =$

4. What is the relationship between the exterior angle of a triangle and the sum of the interior opposite angles?

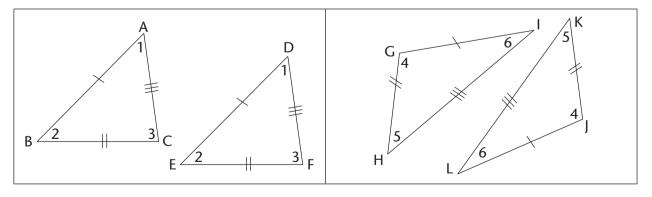
The **exterior angle** of a triangle is equal to the sum of the interior opposite angles.

5. Work out the sizes of angles *a* to *f* below, without using a protractor. Give reasons for the statements you make as you work out the answers.



10.6 Constructing congruent triangles

Two triangles are **congruent** if they have exactly the **same shape and size**: they are able to fit exactly on top of each other. This means that all three corresponding sides and three corresponding angles are equal, as shown in the following two pairs.



 \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF and \triangle GHI \equiv \triangle JKL. In each pair, the corresponding sides and angles are equal.

MINIMUM CONDITIONS FOR CONGRUENCY

To determine whether two triangles are congruent, we need a certain number of measurements, but not all of these. Let's investigate which measurements give us only one possible triangle.

- 1. Use a ruler, compass and protractor to construct the following triangles. Each time minimum measurements are given.
 - (a) Given three sides: side, side, side (SSS): ΔDEF with DE = 7 cm, DF = 6 cm and EF = 5 cm.

(b) Given three angles: angle, angle, angle (AAA): \triangle ABC with $\hat{A} = 80^{\circ}$, $\hat{B} = 60^{\circ}$ and $\hat{C} = 40^{\circ}$.

(c) Given one side and two angles: side, angle, angle (SAA): Δ GHI with GH = 8 cm, \hat{G} = 60° and \hat{H} = 30°.

(d) Given two sides and an included angle: side, angle, side (SAS): Δ JKL with JK = 9 cm, \hat{K} = 130° and KL = 7 cm.

(e) Given two sides and an angle that is not included: side, side, angle (SSA): Δ MNP with MN = 10 cm, \widehat{M} = 50° and PN = 8 cm.

(f) Given a right angle, the hypotenuse and a side (RHS): Δ TRS with TR \perp RS, RS = 7 cm and TS = 8 cm.

(g) Triangle UVW with UV = 6 cm and VW = 4 cm.

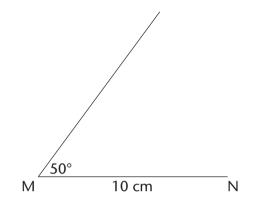
2. Compare your triangles with those of three classmates. Which of your triangles are congruent to theirs? Which are not congruent?

190 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 2

3. Go back to Δ MNP (1e). Did you find that you can draw two different triangles that both meet the given measurements? One of the triangles will be obtuse and the other acute. Follow the construction steps below to see why this is so.

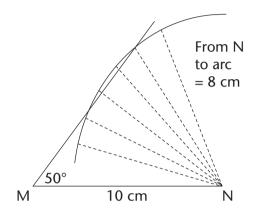
Step 1

Construct MN = 10 cm and the 50° angle at M, even though you do not know the length of unknown side (MP).



Step 2

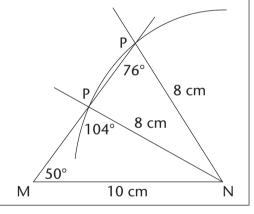
 \widehat{N} is unknown, but NP = 8 cm. So construct an arc 8 cm from N. Every point on the arc is 8 cm from N.



Step 3

Point P must be 8 cm from N and fall on the unknown side of the triangle. The arc intersects the third side at two points, so P can be at either point.

So two triangles are possible, each meeting the conditions given, i.e. MN = 10 cm, NP = 8 cm and $\widehat{M} = 50^{\circ}$.



4. Complete the table. Write down whether we can construct a congruent triangle when the following conditions are given.

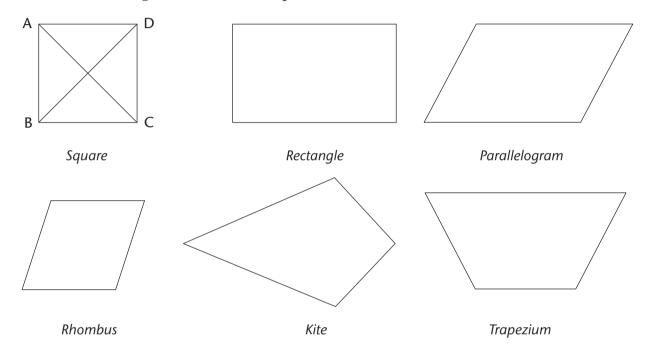
Conditions	Congruent?
3 sides (SSS)	
2 sides (SS)	
3 angles (AAA)	
2 angles and a side (AAS)	
2 sides and an angle not between the sides (SSA)	
2 sides and an angle between the sides (SAS)	
Right-angled with the hypotenuse and a side (RHS)	

10.7 Diagonals of quadrilaterals

DRAWING DIAGONALS

A **diagonal** is a straight line inside a figure that joins two vertices of the figure, where the vertices are not next to each other.

- 1. Look at the quadrilaterals below. The two diagonals of the square have been drawn in: AC and BD.
- 2. Draw in the diagonals of the other quadrilaterals below.



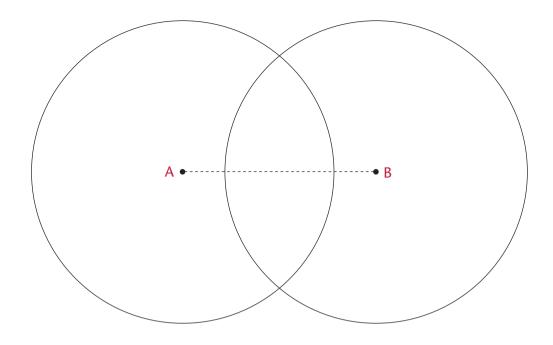
- 3. How many sides does a quadrilateral have?.....
- 4. How many angles does a quadrilateral have?.....
- 5. How many diagonals does a quadrilateral have?.....

DIAGONALS OF A RHOMBUS

On the next page are two overlapping circles with centres A and B. The circles are the same size.

- 1. Construct a rhombus inside the circles by joining the centre of each circle with the intersection points of the circles. Join AB.
- 2. Construct the perpendicular bisector of AB. (Go back to Section 10.1 if you need help.) What do you find?

A **perpendicular bisector** is a line that cuts another line in half at a right angle (90°).

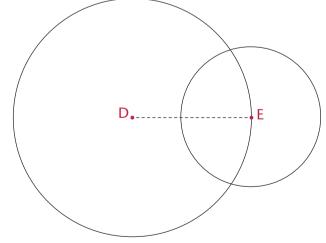


- 3. Do the diagonals bisect each other?.....
- 4. Complete the sentence: The diagonals of a rhombus will always

DIAGONALS OF A KITE

Below are two overlapping circles with centres D and E. The circles are different sizes.

- 1. Construct a kite by joining the centre points of the circles to the intersection points of the circles.
- 2. Draw in the diagonals of the kite.
- 3. Mark all lines that are the same length.

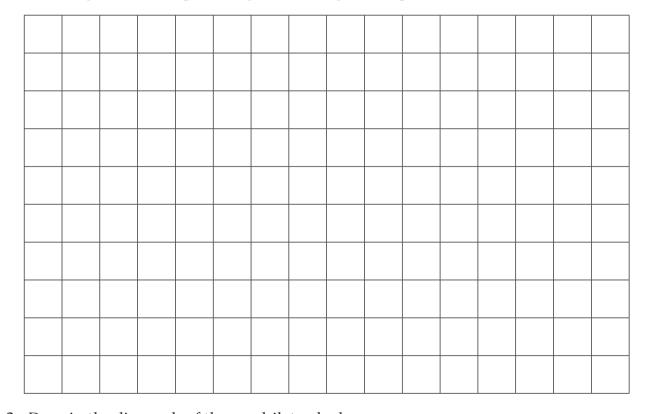


4. Are the diagonals of the kite perpendicular?

5.	Do the diagonals of the kite bisect each other?
	••••••
6.	What is the difference between the diagonals of a rhombus and those of a kite?
	•••••••••••••••••

DIAGONALS OF PARALLELOGRAMS, RECTANGLES AND SQUARES

1. Use the grid to draw a parallelogram, rectangle and square.



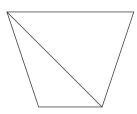
- 2. Draw in the diagonals of the quadrilaterals above.
- 3. Indicate on each shape all the lengths in the diagonals that are equal. (Use a ruler.)
- 4. Use the information you have found to complete the table below. Fill in 'yes' or 'no'.

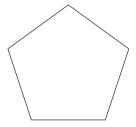
Quadrilateral	Diagonals equal	Diagonals bisect	Diagonals meet at 90°
Parallelogram			
Rectangle			
Square			

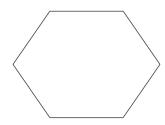
10.8 Angles in polygons

USING DIAGONALS TO INVESTIGATE THE SUM OF THE ANGLES IN POLYGONS

- 1. We can divide a quadrilateral into two triangles by drawing in one diagonal.
 - (a) Draw in diagonals to divide each of the other polygons below into as few triangles as possible.
 - (b) Write down the number of triangles in each polygon.





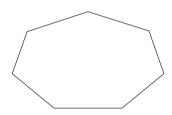


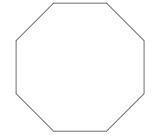
Quadrilateral

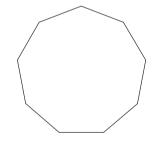
Pentagon

Hexagon

No. of Δs	2	
Sum of ∠s	$2 \times 180^{\circ} = 360^{\circ}$	







Heptagon

Octagon

Nonagon

No. of Δs		
Sum of ∠s		

2. The sum of the angles of one triangle = 180° . A quadrilateral is made up of two triangles, so the sum of the angles in a quadrilateral = $2 \times 180^\circ = 360^\circ$. Work out the sum of the interior angles of each of the other polygons above.

WORKSHEET

1. Match the words in the column on the right with the definitions on the left. Write the letter of the definition next to the matching word.

(a)	A quadrilateral that has diagonals that are perpendicular and they bisect each other	Kite
(b)	A quadrilateral that has diagonals that are perpendicular to each other, and only one diagonal bisects the other	Congruent
(c)	A quadrilateral that has equal diagonals that bisect each other	Exterior angle
(d)	Figures that have exactly the same size and shape	Rhombus
(e)	Divides into two equal parts	Perpendicular
(f)	An angle that is formed outside a closed shape: it is between the side of the shape and a side that has been extended	Bisect
(g)	Lines that intersect at 90 degrees	Special angles
(h)	90°, 45°, 30°, 60°	Rectangle

2.	. Complete the sentence: The exterior angle in a triangle is equal to	• • • • •	• • • •	• • •

3.	(a)	Construct Δ PQR below with angles of 30° and 60°. The side between the
		angles must be 8 cm. You may use only a ruler and a compass.

(b)	/		11 a 191					_								tł	10	e	9	56	ar	1	16	?	r	16	22	a	S	βL	ال	r	e	r	n	е	r	ıt	75	5	8	ab	70) \	e	Ł	П	? (C)ł	16	J I	'l	le	er	ıt	,	to)	_	^	F	"(JI	2	?	
•••	• •	••	••	•	• •	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

CONSTRUCTION OF GEOMETRIC FIGURES

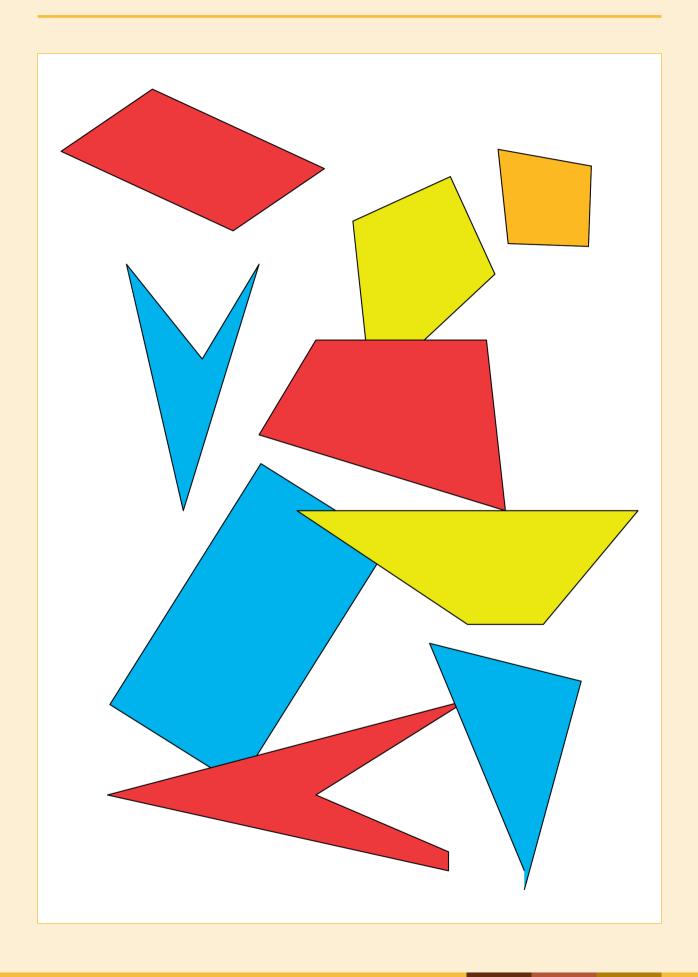
Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 196 2014/07/03 11:00:10 AM

CHAPTER 11 Geometry of 2D shapes

You have learnt to distinguish between equilateral, isosceles and right-angled triangles, and between the following quadrilaterals: parallelograms, rectangles, squares, rhombi, trapeziums and kites. You have investigated the properties of these figures to classify them, such as which sides are equal or parallel, or which angles are equal. In this chapter, you will use your knowledge of the properties of these figures, as well as general properties of triangles and quadrilaterals, to work out further information about the figures. You will also learn more about congruency and similarity in triangles.

11.1	Revision: Classification of triangles	199
11.2	Finding unknown angles in triangles	201
11.3	Quadrilaterals	203
11.4	Congruent triangles	207
11.5	Similar triangles	211
11.6	Extension questions	217

CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES 197

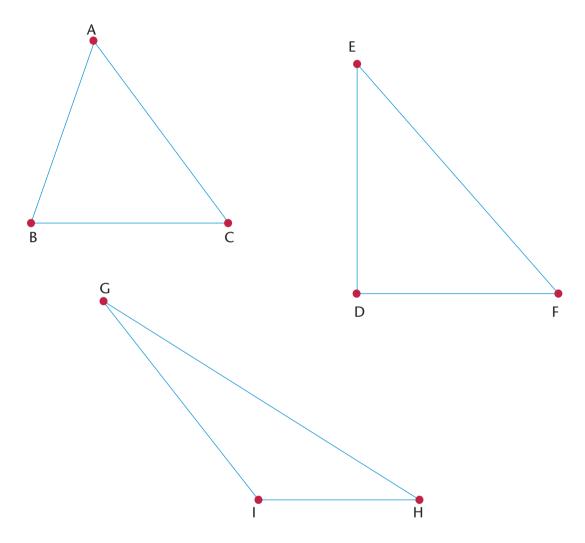


Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 198 2014/07/03 11:00:11 AM

11 Geometry of 2D shapes

11.1 Revision: Classification of triangles

1. Use a protractor to measure the interior angles of each of the following triangles. Write the sizes of the angles on the diagrams.



2. Classify the triangles in question 1 according to their angle properties. Choose from the following types of triangles: acute-angled, obtuse-angled and right-angled.

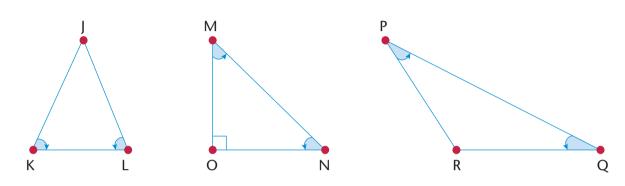
(a)	\triangle ABC is an	triangle, because
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
(b)	ΔEDF is a	triangle, because
		triangle, because

CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES 199

3. The marked angles in each triangle below are equal. Classify the triangles according to angle and side properties.

(a) Δ is an acute isosceles triangle, because and

(c) Δ is an obtuse isosceles triangle, because and



4. Say for what kind of triangle each statement is true. If it is true for all triangles, then write 'All triangles'.

	Statement	True for
(a)	Two sides of the triangle are equal.	
(b)	One angle of the triangle is obtuse.	
(c)	Two angles of the triangle are equal.	
(d)	All three angles of the triangle are equal to 60°.	
(e)	The size of an exterior angle is equal to the sum of the opposite interior angles.	
(f)	The longest side of the triangle is opposite the biggest angle.	
(g)	The sum of the two shorter sides of the triangle is bigger than the length of the longest side.	
(h)	The square of the length of one side is equal to the sum of the squares of the other sides.	
(i)	The square of the length of one side is bigger than the sum of the squares of the other sides.	
(j)	The sum of the interior angles of the triangle is 180°.	

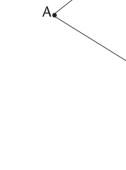
11.2 Finding unknown angles in triangles

When you have to determine the size of an unknown angle or length of a shape in geometry, you must give a reason for each statement you make.

Complete the example below:

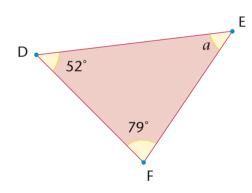
In \triangle ABC, AC = BC and \hat{C} = 40°. Find the size of \hat{B} (shown in the diagram as x).

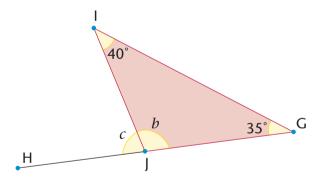
Statement	Reason
AC = BC	Given
$\therefore \hat{A} = \hat{B}$	
$180^\circ = 40^\circ + x + x$	Sum ∠s ∆
$180^{\circ} - 40^{\circ} = 2x$	
∴ <i>x</i> =	



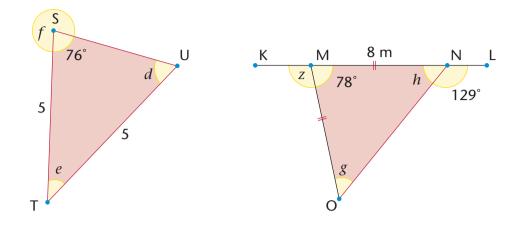
FINDING UNKNOWN LENGTHS AND ANGLES

1. Calculate the sizes of the unknown angles.

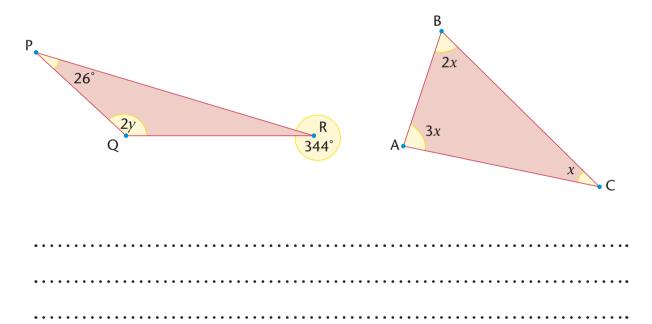




2. Determine the sizes of the unknown angles and the length of MO.



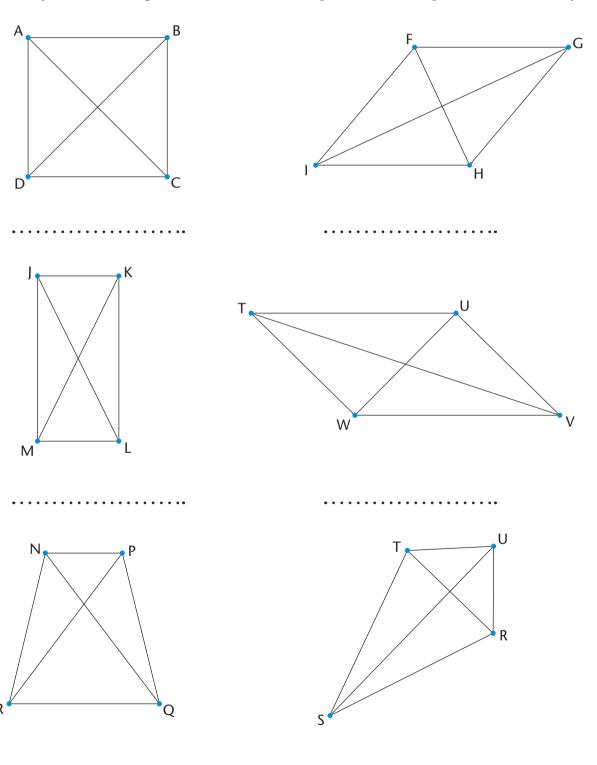
3. Calculate the sizes of y and x.



11.3 Quadrilaterals

PROPERTIES OF QUADRILATERALS

1. Name the following quadrilaterals. Mark equal angles and equal sides in each figure. Use your ruler and protractor to measure angle sizes and lengths where necessary.



CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES **203**

2. Complete the following table:

Properties	Tro	ue for th	e follow	/ing qua	drilater	als
	Square	Rhombus	Rectangle	Parallelogram	Kite	Trapezium
At least one pair of opposite angles is equal.	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Both pairs of opposite angles are equal.						
At least one pair of adjacent angles is equal.						
All four angles are equal.						
Any two opposite sides are equal.						
Two adjacent sides are equal, and the other two adjacent sides are also equal.						
All four sides are equal.						
At least one pair of opposite sides is parallel.						
Any two opposite sides are parallel.						
The two diagonals are perpendicular.						
At least one diagonal bisects the other one.						
The two diagonals bisect each other.						
The two diagonals are equal.						
At least one diagonal bisects a pair of opposite angles.						
Both diagonals bisect a pair of opposite angles.						
The sum of the interior angles is 360°.						

3.	Look at the properties of a square and a rhombus.
	(a) Are all the properties of a square also the properties of a rhombus? Explain.
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••
	•••••
	(b) Are all the properties of a rhombus also the properties of a square? Explain.
	(c) Which statement is true?
	A square is a special kind of rhombus. A rhombus is a special kind of square.
1.	Look at the properties of rectangles and squares.
	(a) Are all the properties of a square also the properties of a rectangle? Explain.
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	(b) Are all the properties of a rectangle also the properties of a square? Explain.
	(c) Which statement is true?
	A square is a special kind of rectangle.
	A rectangle is a special kind of square.
5.	Look at the properties of parallelograms and rectangles.
	(a) Are all the properties of a parallelogram also the properties of a rectangle? Explain.
	(b) Are all the properties of a rectangle also the properties of a parallelogram? Explain.
	(c) Which statement is true?
	A rectangle is a special parallelogram.
	A parallelogram is a special rectangle.

CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES **205**

6. Look at the properties of a rhombus and a parallelogram. Is a rhombus a special kind of parallelogram? Explain.7. Compare the properties of a kite and a parallelogram. Why is a kite not a special kind of parallelogram?

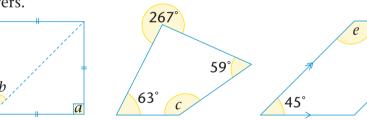
special kind of parallelogram?

8. Compare the properties of a trapezium and a parallelogram. Why is a trapezium not a

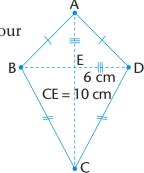
.....

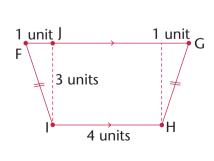
UNKNOWN SIDES AND ANGLES IN QUADRILATERALS

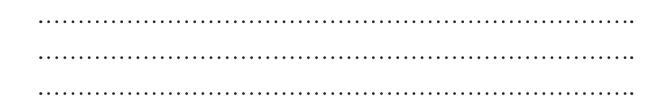
1. Determine the sizes of angles *a* to *e* in the quadrilaterals below. Give reasons for your answers.



2. Calculate the perimeters of the quadrilaterals on the right. Give your answers to two decimal places.





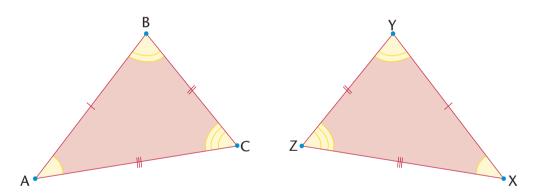


11.4 Congruent triangles

DEFINITION AND NOTATION OF CONGRUENT TRIANGLES

If two triangles are congruent, then they have exactly the same size and shape. In other words, if you cut out one of the triangles and place it on the other, they will match exactly.

If you know that two triangles are congruent, then each side in the one triangle will be equal to each corresponding side in the second triangle. Also, each angle in the one triangle will be equal to each corresponding angle in the second triangle.



In the triangles above, you can see that $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle XYZ$.

Congruency symbol

The order in which you write the letters when stating that two triangles are congruent is very important. The letters of

≡ means 'is congruent to'

the corresponding vertices between the two triangles must appear in the same position in the notation. For example, the notation for the triangles above should be: $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle XYZ$, because it indicates that $\hat{A} = \hat{X}$, $\hat{B} = \hat{Y}$, $\hat{C} = \hat{Z}$, AB = XY, BC = YZ and AC = XZ.

It is incorrect to write $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle ZYX$. Although the letters refer to the same triangles, this notation indicates that $\hat{A} = \hat{Z}$, $\hat{C} = \hat{X}$, AB = ZY and BC = YX, and these statements are not true.

Write down the equal angles and sides according to the following notations:

1. $\Delta KLM \equiv \Delta PQR$: 2. $\Delta FGH \equiv \Delta CST$:

CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES **207**

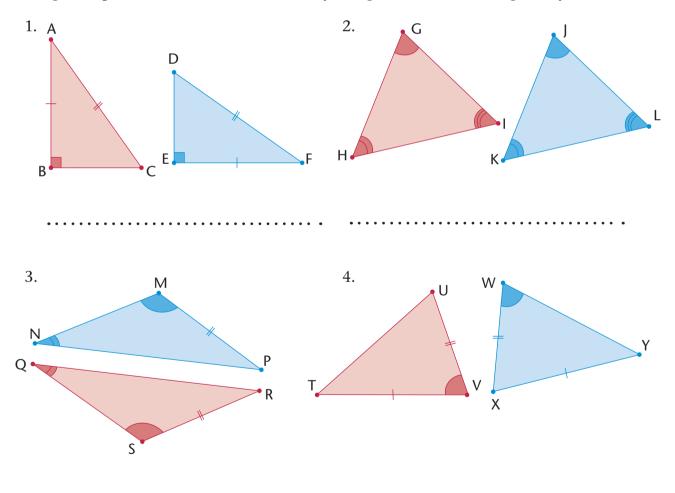
MINIMUM CONDITIONS FOR CONGRUENT TRIANGLES

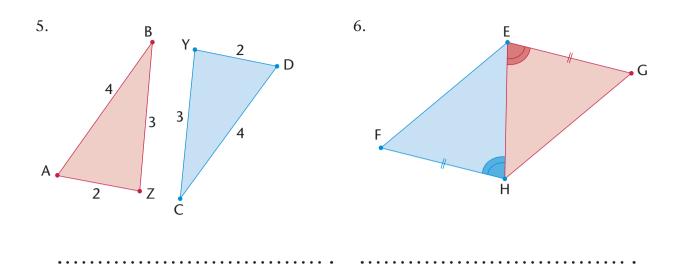
In the previous chapter, you investigated the minimum conditions that must be satisfied in order to establish that two triangles are congruent.

The conditions for congruency:

- SSS (all corresponding sides are equal)
- SAS (two corresponding sides and the angle between the two sides are equal)
- AAS (two corresponding angles and any corresponding side are equal)
- RHS (both triangles have a 90° angle and have equal hypotenuses and one other side equal).

Decide whether or not the triangles in each pair below are congruent. For each congruent pair, write the notation correctly and give a reason for congruency.





PROVING THAT TRIANGLES ARE CONGRUENT

You can use what you know about the minimum conditions for congruency to prove that two triangles are congruent.

When giving a proof for congruency, remember the following:

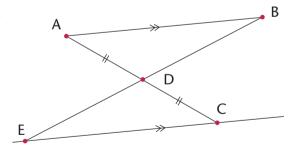
- Each statement you make needs a reason.
- You must give three statements to prove any two triangles congruent.
- Give the reason for congruency.

Example:

In the sketch on the right: $AB \parallel EC$ and AD = DC. Prove that the triangles are congruent.

Solution:

Statement	Reason
In ΔABD and ΔCED:	
1) AD = DC	Given
2) $\widehat{ADB} = \widehat{CDE}$	Vert. opp. ∠s
3) $\widehat{BAD} = \widehat{ECD}$	Alt. ∠s (AB EC)
$\therefore \Delta ABD \equiv \Delta CED$	AAS

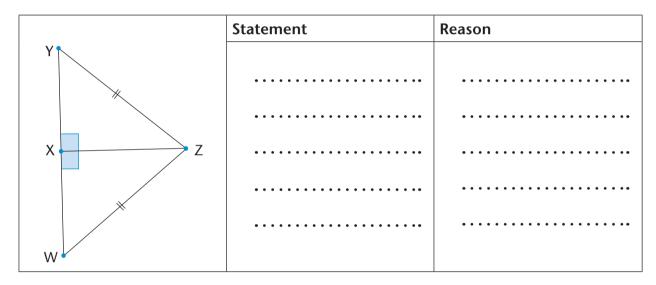


Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 209 2014/07/03 11:00:15 AM

1. Prove that $\triangle ACE \equiv \triangle BDE$.

	Statement	Reason
A		
*	•••••	
	•••••	•••••
E	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	••••••
C	••••••	
V D		

2. Prove that $\Delta WXZ \equiv \Delta YXZ$.



3. Prove that QR = SP. (Hint: First prove that the triangles are congruent.)

	Statement	Reason
Q	•••••	•••••
		•••••
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
P S	••••••	••••••

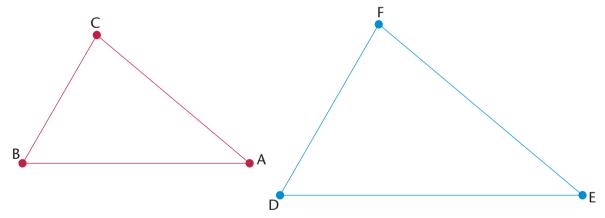
4. Prove that the triangles below are congruent. Then find the size of Q \widehat{M} P.

	Statement	Reason
M	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
*		
83° N	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
41°	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
P	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
	•••••	•••••

11.5 Similar triangles

PROPERTIES OF SIMILAR TRIANGLES

 Δ BAC and Δ DEF below are similar to each other. Similar figures have the same shape, but their sizes can be different.



1. (a) Use a protractor to measure the angles in each triangle above. Then complete the table below.

Angle	Angle	What do you notice?
B =	D =	
$\widehat{A} =$	Ê =	
Ĉ =	Ê =	

(b) What can you say about the sizes of the angles in similar triangles?

2. (a) Use a ruler to measure the lengths of the sides in each triangle in question 1. Then complete the table below.

Length (cm)	Length (cm)	Ratio
BA =	DE =	BA: DE = $= 1: 1\frac{1}{3}$
BC =	DF =	BC: DF = =
CA =	FE =	CA: FE = =

(b)	What can you say about the relationship
	between the sides in similar triangles?

Ratio reminder

You read 2:1 as 'two to one'.

3.	The following notation shows that the triangles are similar: $\Delta BAC \parallel \mid \Delta DEF$. Why do you think we write the first triangle as ΔBAC and not as ΔABC ?
	••••••
	••••••

The properties of similar triangles:

- The corresponding angles are equal.
- The corresponding sides are in proportion.

Notation for similar triangles:

If ΔXYZ is similar to ΔPQR , then we write: $\Delta XYZ \, ||| \, \Delta PQR$.

As for the notation of congruent figures, the order of the letters in the notation of similar triangles indicates which angles and sides are equal. For $\Delta XYZ \parallel \Delta PQR$:

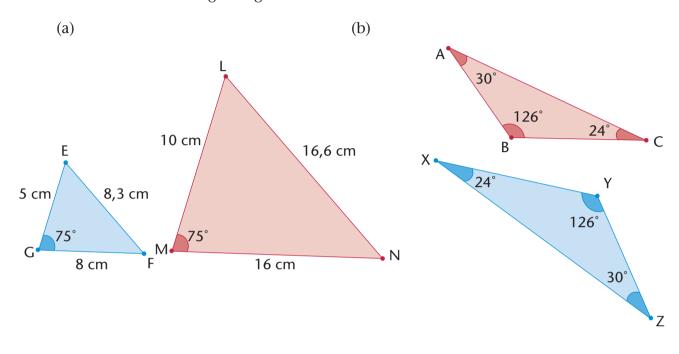
Angles: $\hat{X} = \hat{P}$ and $\hat{Y} = \hat{Q}$ and $\hat{Z} = \hat{R}$ Sides: XY: PQ = XZ: PR = YZ: QR

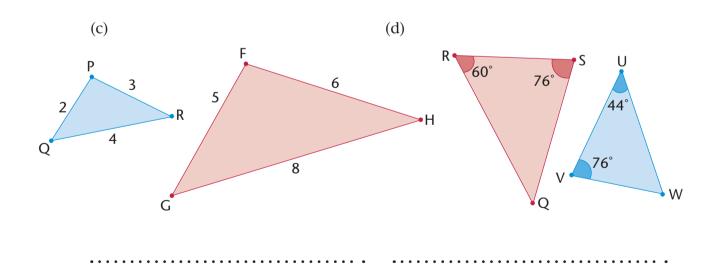
If the triangles' vertices were written in a different order, then the statements above would not be true.

When proving that triangles are similar, you either need to show that the corresponding angles are equal or you must show that the sides are in proportion.

WORKING WITH PROPERTIES OF SIMILAR TRIANGLES

1. Decide if the following triangles are similar to each other.





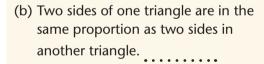
CHAPTER 11: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES 213

- 2. Do the following task in your exercise book.
 - Use a ruler and protractor to construct the triangles described in (a) to (d) below.
 - Use your knowledge of similarity to draw the second triangle in each question.
 - Indicate the sizes of the corresponding sides and angles on the second triangle.
 - (a) In \triangle EFG, $\widehat{G} = 75^{\circ}$, EG = 4 cm and GF = 5 cm. \triangle ABC is an enlargement of \triangle EFG, with its sides three times longer.
 - (b) In Δ MNO, $\widehat{M} = 45^{\circ}$, $\widehat{N} = 30^{\circ}$ and MN = 5 cm. Δ PQR is similar to Δ MNO. The sides of Δ MNO to Δ PQR are in proportion 1 : 3.
 - (c) \triangle RST is an isosceles triangle. $\hat{R} = 40^{\circ}$, RS is 10 cm and RS = RT. \triangle VWX is similar to \triangle RST. The sides of \triangle RST to \triangle VWX are in proportion 1: $\frac{1}{2}$.
 - (d) Δ KLM is right-angled at \hat{L} , LM is 7 cm and the hypotenuse is 12 cm. Δ XYZ is similar to Δ KLM, so that the sides are a third of the length of Δ KLM.

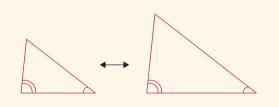
INVESTIGATION: MINIMUM CONDITIONS FOR SIMILARITY

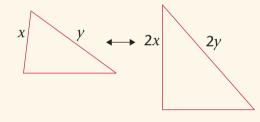
Which of the following are minimum conditions for similar triangles?

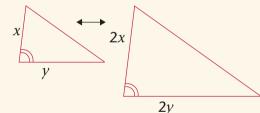
(a) Two angles in one triangle are equal to two angles in another triangle.

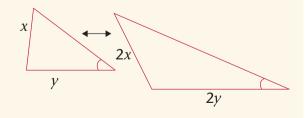


- (c) Two sides of one triangle are in the same proportion as two sides in another triangle, and the angle between the two sides is equal to the angle between the corresponding sides.
- (d) Two sides of one triangle are in the same proportion as two sides in another triangle, and one angle not between the two sides is equal to the corresponding angle in the other triangle.



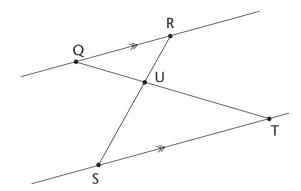






SOLVING PROBLEMS WITH SIMILAR TRIANGLES

1. Line segment QR is parallel to line segment ST.

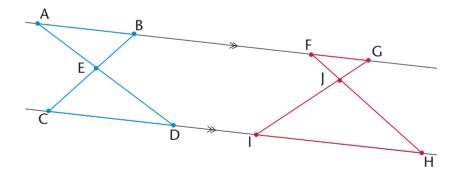


Parallel lines never meet. Two lines are parallel to each other if the distance between them is the same along the whole length of the lines.

Complete the following proof that $\Delta QRU \parallel \Delta TSU$:

Statement	Reason
$R\widehat{Q}T = Q\widehat{T}S$	Alt. ∠s
$Q\hat{R}S =$	
=	Vert. opp. ∠s
∴ ∆QRU ∆TSU	Equal ∠s (or AAA)

2. The following intersecting line segments form triangle pairs between parallel lines.



(a) Are the triangles in each pair similar? Explain.

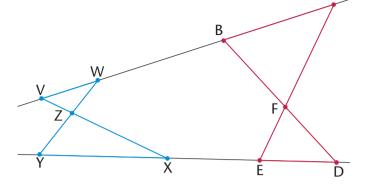
•••••

(b) Write down pairs of similar triangles.

(c) Are triangles like these always similar? Explain how you can be sure without measuring every possible triangle pair.

•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

3.	The intersecting lines on the
	right form triangle pairs between
	the line segments that are not
	parallel. Are these triangle pairs
	similar? Explain why or why not

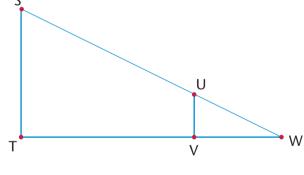


.....

4. Consider the triangles below. DE || BC. Prove that \triangle ABC ||| \triangle ADE.

Λ	Statement	Reason
E	••••	•••••
D	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
c	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	•••••	•••••
В	•••••	•••••

5. In the diagram on the right, ST is a telephone pole and UV is a vertical stick. The stick is 1 m high and it casts a shadow of 1,7 m (VW). The telephone pole casts a shadow of 5,1 m (TW). Use similar triangles to calculate the height of the telephone pole.



• •	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•																												
	_	_	_			_				_									_			_	_	_				_	_			_	_	_			_	_			_			_			_							_		_	
• •	٠	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•		•	٠	•	•	•	٠	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	• •
	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•		•	•	•		•	•	•	•	• •		•	•	•		•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •
	_	_	_								_						_	_	_			_		_										_						_										_			_	_			
• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	••
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	•		•	•	•		•	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	• •	•	• •	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •
		_					_			_				_				_											_															_			_			_				_		_	
- •	٠	•	•			٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	- '	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•	-	•	•	•	- '	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•

6.	How many similar triangles are there in the diagram below? Explain your answer.
	A
11	1.6 Extension questions
	1.0 Extension questions
1.	ΔABC on the right is equilateral. D is the midpoint of AB, E is the midpoint of BC and F is the midpoint of AC. (a) Prove that ΔBDE is an equilateral triangle.
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	••••••
	(b) Find all the congruent triangles. Give a proof for each.
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	••••••
	•••••

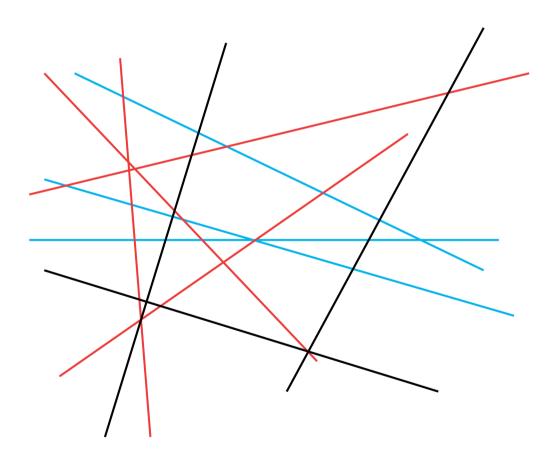
CHAPTER IT: GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES 217

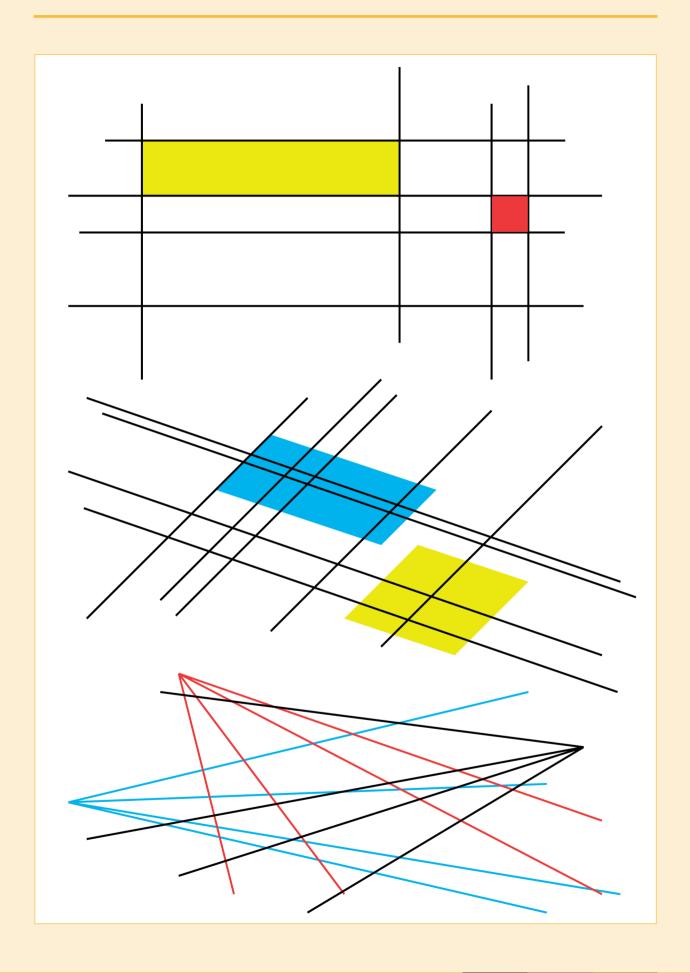
	••••••
	(c) Name as many similar triangles as you can. Explain how you know they are similar.
	(d) What is the proportion of the corresponding sides of the similar triangles?
	(e) Prove that DE is parallel to AC.
	(f) Is DF parallel to BC? Is EF parallel to BA? Explain.
2.	Consider the similar triangles drawn below using concentric circles. Explain why the triangles are similar in each diagram.
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

CHAPTER 12 Geometry of straight lines

In Grade 8 you identified relationships between angles on straight lines. In this chapter, you will revise all of the angle relationships and write clear descriptions of them.

12.1	Angle relationships	221
12.2	Identify and name angles	230
12.3	Solving problems	232





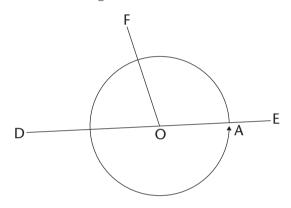
12 Geometry of straight lines

12.1 Angle relationships

Remember that 360° is one full revolution.

If you look at something and then turn all the way around so that you are looking at it again, you have turned through an angle of 360°. If you turn only halfway around, so that you look at something that was right behind your back, you have turned through an angle of 180°.

1. Answer the questions about the figure below.



(a) Is angle FOD in the figure smaller or bigger than a right angle?

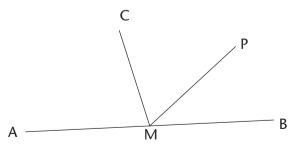
(b) Is angle FOE in the above figure smaller or bigger than a right angle?

(b) is angle POE in the above figure smaller of bigger than a right angle:

On the figure above, $\widehat{FOD} + \widehat{FOE} = \text{half of a revolution} = 180^\circ$.

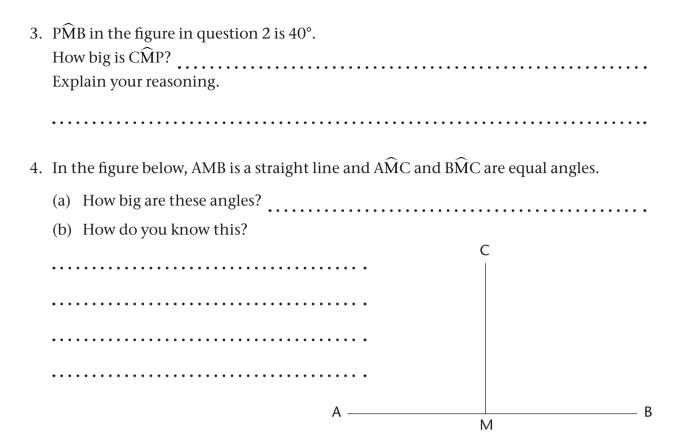
The sum of the angles on a straight line is 180°. When the sum of angles is 180°, the angles are called **supplementary**.

2. CMA in the figure below is 75°. AMB is a straight line.



(a) How big is \widehat{CMB} ?

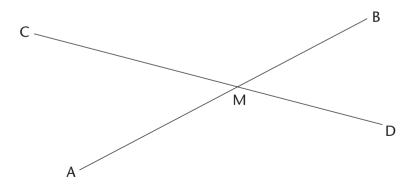
(b) Why do you say so?



When one line forms two equal angles where it meets another line, the two lines are said to be **perpendicular**.

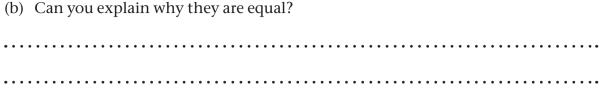
Because the two equal angles are angles on a straight line, their sum is 180° , hence each angle is 90° .

5. In the figure below, lines AB and CD intersect at point M.

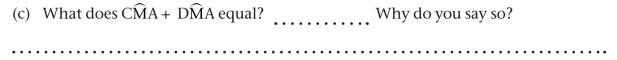


(a) Does it look as if \widehat{CMA} and \widehat{BMD} are equal?

In this chapter, you are required to give good reasons for every statement you make.



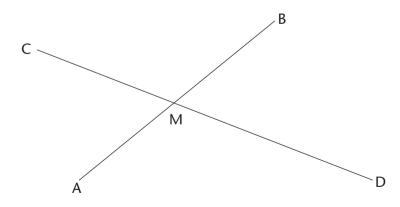
.....



- (e) Is it true that $\widehat{CMA} + \widehat{DMA} = \widehat{CMA} + \widehat{CMB}$?
- (f) Which angle occurs on both sides of the equation in (e)?
- 6. Look carefully at your answers to questions 5(c) to 5(e).

 Now try to explain your observation in question 5(a).
- 7. In the figure below, AB and CD intersect in M. Four angles are formed. Angle CMB and angle AMD are called **vertically opposite** angles. Angle CMA and angle BMD are also **vertically opposite**.

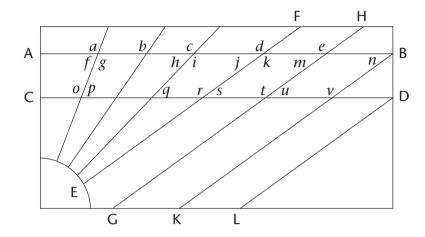
When two straight lines intersect, the vertically opposite angles are equal.



- (a) If angle BMC = 125°, how big is angle AMD?
- (b) Why do say so?

LINES AND ANGLES

A line that intersects other lines is called a **transversal**.



In the above pattern, AB is parallel to CD and EF || GH || KB || LD.

1.	angles a, b, c, d, and e are corresponding angles . Do the corresponding angles loo appear to be equal?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
2.	Investigate whether the corresponding angles are equal by using tracing paper. Trace the angle you want to compare to other angles and place it on top of the other angle to find out if they are equal. What do you notice?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
3.	Angles f , h , j , m and n are also corresponding angles. Identify all the other groups of corresponding angles in the pattern.
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
4.	Describe the position of corresponding angles that are formed when a transversal intersects other lines.
	•••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••

224 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 2

5.	The following are pairs of alternate angles : g and o ; j and s ; and k and r . Do these angles appear to be equal?
	••••••••••••••••••••••••
6.	Investigate whether the alternate angles are equal by using tracing paper. Trace the angle you want to compare and place it on top of the other angle to find out if they are equal. What do you notice?
	••••••
7.	Identify two more pairs of alternate angles.
	••••••
8.	Clearly describe the relative position of alternate angles that are formed when a transversal intersects other lines.
	••••••
9.	Did you notice something about some of the pairs of corresponding angles when you did the investigation in question 6? Describe your finding.
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••
10	Angles f and o ; i and q and k and s are all pairs of co-interior angles . Identify three more pairs of co-interior angles in the pattern.
	The angles in the same relative position at each intersection where a straight line crosses two others are called corresponding angles .
	Angles on different sides of a transversal and between two other lines are called alternate angles .
	Angles on the same side of the transversal and between two other lines are called co-interior angles.

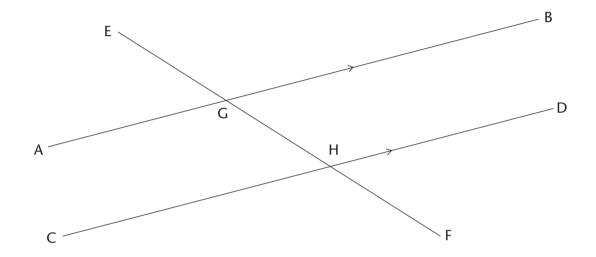
Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 225 2014/07/03 11:00:23 AM

ANGLES FORMED BY PARALLEL LINES

Corresponding angles

The lines AB and CD below never meet. Lines that never meet and are at a fixed distance from one another are called parallel lines. We write AB || CD.

Parallel lines have the same direction, i.e. they form **equal corresponding angles** with any line that intersects them.



The line EF cuts AB at G and CD at H.

EF is a transversal that cuts parallel lines AB and CD.

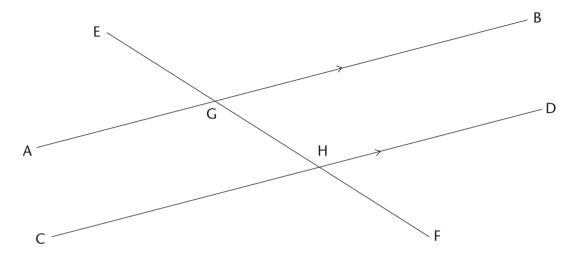
1.	(a)	Look carefully at the angles EGA and EHC in the above figure. They are called corresponding angles . Do they appear to be equal?
	(b)	Measure the two angles to check whether they are equal. What do you notice?
	• • •	
2.	1	opose EĜA and EĤC are really equal. Would EĜB and EĤD then also be equal? re reasons to support your answer.
	• • •	
	• • •	

226 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 2

When two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, the corresponding angles are equal.

Alternate angles

The angles \widehat{BGF} and \widehat{CHE} below are called **alternate angles**. They are on opposite sides of the transversal.



3.	Do you think angles AGF and DHE should also be called alternate angles?
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
4.	Do you think alternate angles are equal? Investigate by using the tracing paper like you did previously, or measure the angles accurately with your protractor. What do you notice?
	•••••
	When parallel lines are cut by a transversal, the alternate angles are equal.
5.	Try to explain why alternate angles are equal when the lines that are cut by a transversal are parallel, keeping in mind that corresponding angles are equal.

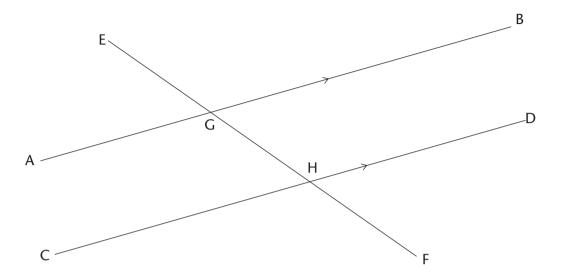
Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 227 2014/07/03 11:00:23 AM

By answering the following questions, you should be able to see how you can explain why alternate angles are equal when parallel lines are cut by a transversal. 6. Are angles BGH and DHF in the figure corresponding angles? What do you know about corresponding angles? Ε. 7. (a) What can you say about $\widehat{BGH} + \widehat{AGH}$? Give a reason. (b) What can you say about $\widehat{DHG} + \widehat{CHG}$? Give a reason. (c) Is it true that $B\widehat{G}H + A\widehat{G}H = D\widehat{H}G + C\widehat{H}G$? Explain. (d) Will the equation in (c) still be true if you replace angle $B\widehat{G}H$ on the left-hand side with angle CĤG? 8. Look carefully at your work in question 7 and write an explanation why alternate angles are equal, when two parallel lines are cut by a transversal.

Co-interior angles

The angles \widehat{AGH} and \widehat{CHG} in the figure below are called **co-interior angles**. They are on the same side of the transversal.

"co-" means together.
"co-interior" means on the same side.



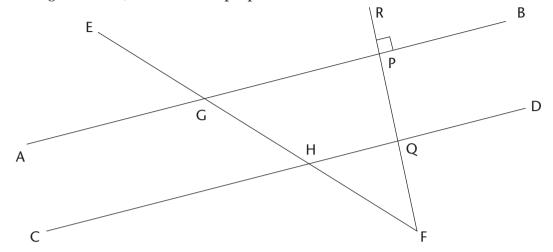
•	()	what do you know about ChG+ DhG? Explain.
	(b)	What do you know about BĜH + AĜH? Explain.
	(c)	What do you know about BĜH + CĤG? Explain.
		What conclusion can you draw about $A\widehat{G}H + C\widehat{H}G$? Give detailed reasons for your conclusion.
	•••	

When two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, the sum of two co-interior angles is 180° .

Another way of saying this is to say that the two co-interior angles are **supplementary**.

12.2 Identify and name angles

1. In the figure below, the line RF is perpendicular to AB.



(a)	Is RF also	perpendicular t	o CD? Justif	y :	your answer.
-----	------------	-----------------	--------------	-----	--------------

• • •	
(b)	Name four pairs of supplementary angles in the figure. In each case say how you
	know that the angles are supplementary.
• • •	

	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	•	• •
•••••	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	• •		•	•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•	•	• •		•	•	•	• •	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•			•		•	•	•			•	•	•	
		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•		•	•	•		•			•	•	•		•			•			•	•			•	•	•			•			•				•	•	•					•	•				•			• •

- (c) Name four pairs of co-interior angles in the figure.
- (d) Name four pairs of corresponding angles in the figure.

• • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • •	

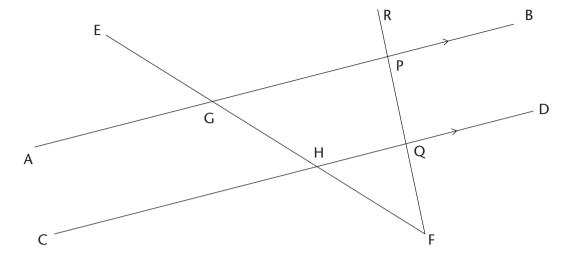
••••••••••••••••••••••••

(e) Name four pairs of alternate angles in the figure.

•	•	 •	•	•	 , ,	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		 •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	, ,	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	 •	•	•	•	•	, ,	,	•	•	•	•
•	•	 •	•	•	 	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		 •	•	•	•	•		•	•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	, ,	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•		 •	•	•	•	•	, ,	,	•	•	•	•

.....

2. Now you are given that AB and CD in the figure below are parallel.



(a)	If it is also given that RF is perpendicular to AB, will RF also be perpendicular to
	CD? Justify your answer.

Name all pairs of supplementary angles in the figure. In each case say how you
know that the angles are supplementary.

•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	, ,	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	, ,	•	•	•	•	•

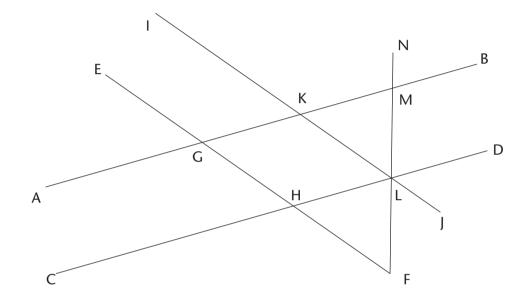
• • •	
(c)	Suppose $E\widehat{G}A = x$. Give the size of as many angles in the figure as you can, in
	terms of x. Each time give a reason for your answer.

• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	, •		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	 •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
• •	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	, ,	, (•		•	•	•	•	•		•	•	 •	•		•	•	•		•			•	•				•				•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
													•	•				, .											 																								•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•			•
• •																																																																					
• •	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•			• •		•		•	•	•	•	•		•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•									•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

12.3 Solving problems

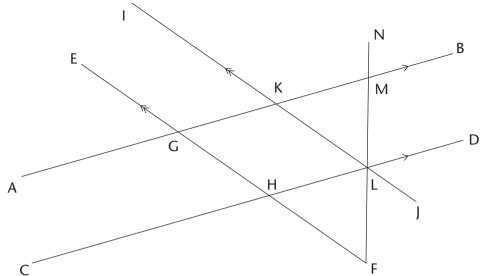
1. Line segments AB and CD in the figure below are parallel. EF and IJ are also parallel. Mark these facts on the figure, and then answer the questions.

When you solve problems in geometry you can use a shorthand way to write your reasons. For example, if two angles are equal because they are corresponding angles, then you can write (corr ∠s, AB || CD) as the reason.



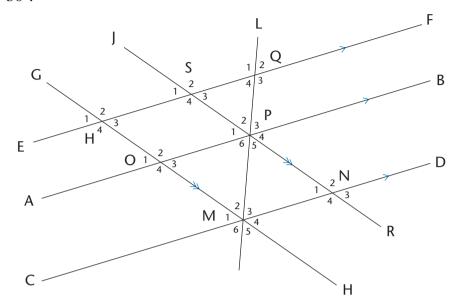
` '	Name five angles in the figure that are equal to GHD. Give a reason for each of your answers.
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	Name all the angles in the figure that are equal to $A\widehat{G}H$. Give a reason for each of your answers.
• • •	
• • •	

2. AB and CD in the figure below are parallel. EF and IJ are also parallel. $N\widehat{M}B = 80^{\circ}$ and $J\widehat{L}F = 40^{\circ}$.



Find the sizes of as many angles in the figure as you can, giving reasons.	
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • • •
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • • •
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • •
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • • •
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • • •
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • •
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • •
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • •
•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• • • • • •
•••••	• • • • • •
••••••	• • • • • •
••••••	• • • • • • •
••••••	• • • • • • •
	• • • • • •

3. In the figure below, AB || CD; EF || AB; JR || GH. You are also given that $\widehat{PMN} = 60^{\circ}$, $\widehat{RND} = 50^{\circ}$.



(a) Find the sizes of as many angles in the figure as you can, giving reasons.

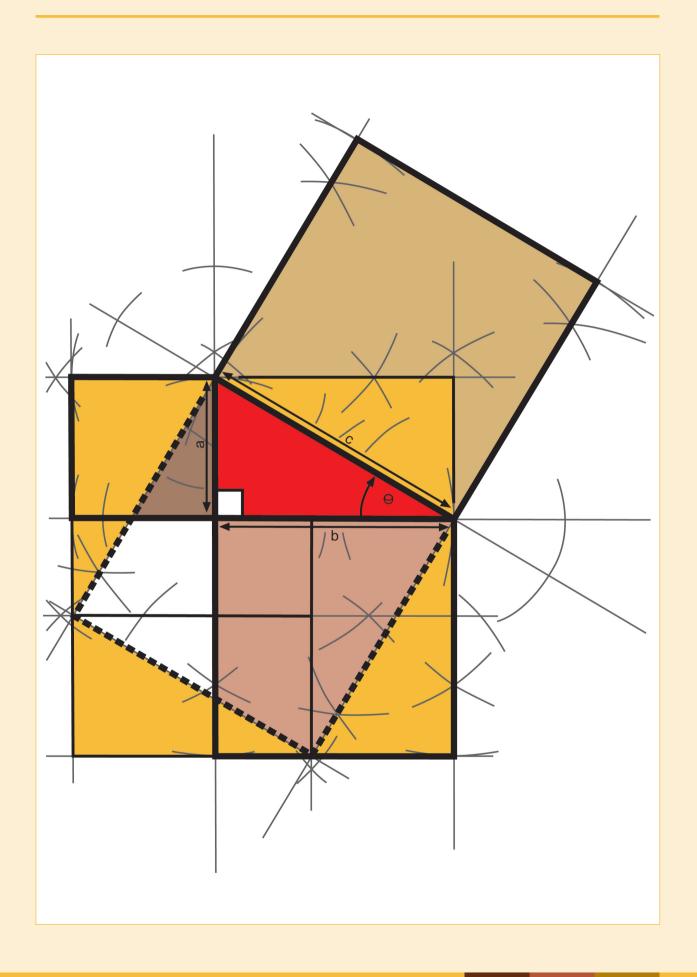
(b) Are EF and CD parallel? Give reasons for your answers.

CHAPTER 13 Pythagoras' Theorem

In this chapter, you will revise what you have learnt about the Theorem of Pythagoras in Grade 8. You will investigate how the theorem is proved, what it means, and how to apply it in order to work out unknown lengths in right-angled triangles and other geometric figures.

13.1	Investigating the sides of a right-angled triangle	237
13.2	Checking for right-angled triangles	239
13.3	Finding missing sides	241
13.4	More practice using Pythagoras' Theorem	246

CHAPTER 13: PTIHAGORAS THEOREM 233



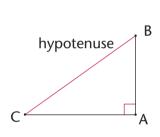
Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 236 2014/07/03 11:00:26 AM

13 Pythagoras' Theorem

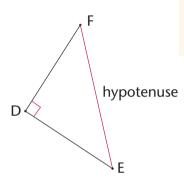
13.1 Investigating the sides of a right-angled triangle

A **theorem** is a rule or a statement that has been proved through reasoning. Pythagoras' Theorem is a rule that applies only to **right-angled triangles**. The theorem is named after the Greek mathematician, Pythagoras.

A right-angled triangle has one 90° angle. The longest side of the right-angled triangle is called the **hypotenuse**.



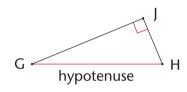
Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 237



Pythagoras (569-475 BC)

Pythagoras was an influential mathematician. Like many Greek mathematicians of 2 500 years ago, he was also a philosopher and a scientist. He formulated the best-known theorem, today known as Pythagoras' Theorem.

However, the theorem had already been in use 1 000 years earlier, by the Chinese and the Babylonians.



The **hypotenuse** is the side opposite the 90° angle in a right-angled triangle. It is always the longest side.

How to say it:

'high - pot - eh - news'

INVESTIGATING SQUARES ON THE SIDES OF RIGHT-ANGLED TRIANGLES

1.	The	e figure shows a right-angled triangle with			
	squ	ares on each of the sides.			
	(a)	Write down the areas of the following:			
		Square A:	С		A
		Square B:			
		Square C:			
	(b)	Add Area of square B + Area of square C:			
					В
	()	TA71 (1 (* 1 (4) 7			
	(c)	What do you notice about the areas?			
	- , •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	 • •	•	

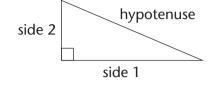
2.	The figure below is similar to the one in question 1. The lengths of the sides of the right-angled triangle are 5 cm and 12 cm. (a) What is the length of the hypotenuse? Count the squares.
	(b) Use the squares to find the following: Area of A:
	Area of B:
	Area of C:
	Area of B + Area of C:
	(c) What do you notice about the areas? Is it similar to your answer in 1(c)?
3.	A right-angled triangle has side lengths of 8 cm and 15 cm. Use your findings in the previous questions to answer the following questions: (a) What is the area of the square drawn along the hypotenuse? 15 cm
	8 cm
	(b) What is the length of the triangle's hypotenuse?
	•••••

230 IVIATHEIVIATICS GRADE 9: TERIVI 2

In the previous activity, you should have discovered Pythagoras' Theorem for right-angled triangles.

Pythagoras' Theorem says:

In a right-angled triangle, a square formed on the hypotenuse will have the same area as the sum of the area of the two squares formed on the other sides of the triangle. Therefore:



 $(Hypotenuse)^2 = (Side 1)^2 + (Side 2)^2$

13.2 Checking for right-angled triangles

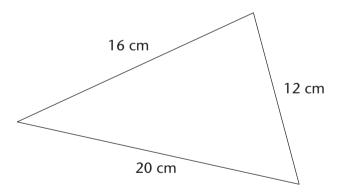
Pythagoras' Theorem applies in two ways:

- If a triangle is right-angled, the sides will have the following relationship: $(Hypotenuse)^2 = (Side 1)^2 + (Side 2)^2$
- If the sides have the relationship: $(\text{Longest side})^2 = (\text{Side 1})^2 + (\text{Side 2})^2$, then the triangle is a right-angled triangle.

So we can test if any triangle is right-angled without using a protractor.

Example:

Is a triangle with sides 12 cm, 16 cm and 20 cm right-angled?



 $(Longest \ side)^2 = 20^2 = 400 \ cm^2$

 $(\text{Side } 1)^2 + (\text{Side } 2)^2 = 12^2 + 16^2 = 144 + 256 = 400 \text{ cm}^2$

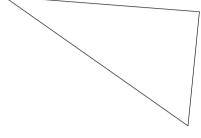
 $(Longest \ side)^2 = (Side \ 1)^2 + (Side \ 2)^2$

 \therefore The triangle is right-angled.

ARE THESE RIGHT-ANGLED TRIANGLES?

1. This triangle's side lengths are 29 mm, 20 mm and 21 mm. Prove that it is a

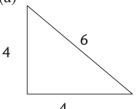
right-angled triangle.



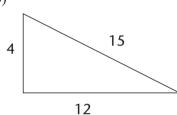
.....

2. Use Pythagoras' Theorem to determine whether these triangles are right-angled. All values are in the same units.

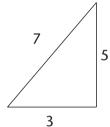
(a)



(b)



(c)



.....

3. Determine whether the following side lengths would form right-angled triangles. All values are in the same units.

- (a) 7, 9 and 12
- (b) 7, 12 and 14
- (c) 16, 8 and 10

.....

.....

- (d) 6, 8 and 10
- (e) 8, 15 and 17
- (f) 16, 21 and 25

.....

-
-

13.3 Finding missing sides

You can use the Theorem of Pythagoras to find the lengths of missing sides if you know that a triangle is right-angled.

FINDING THE MISSING HYPOTENUSE

Example:

Calculate the length of the hypotenuse if the lengths of the other two sides are 6 units and 8 units.

 \triangle ABC is right-angled, so:

$$AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2$$

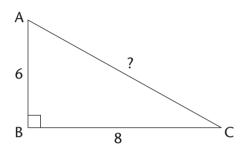
$$= 6^2 + 8^2 \text{ units}^2$$

$$= 36 + 64 \text{ units}^2$$

$$= 100 \text{ units}^2$$

$$AC = \sqrt{100} \text{ units}$$

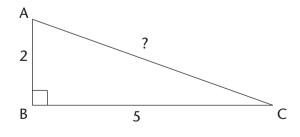
$$= 10 \text{ units}$$



Sometimes the square root of a number is not a whole number or a simple fraction. In these cases, you can leave the answer under the square root sign. This form of the number is called a **surd**.

Example:

Calculate the length of the hypotenuse of ΔABC if $\hat{B} = 90^{\circ}$, AB = 2 units and BC = 5 units. Leave your answer in surd form, where applicable. Remember when taking the square root that length is always positive.



You pronounce *surd* so that it rhymes with *word*.

 $\sqrt{5}$ is an example of a number in surd form.

 $\sqrt{9}$ is not a surd because you can simplify it:

$$\sqrt{9} = 3$$

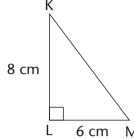
 $AC^2 = AB^2 + BC^2$

 $AC = \sqrt{29}$ units

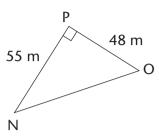
 $= 2^2 + 5^2 \text{ units}^2$

 $= 4 + 25 \text{ units}^2$ = 29 units² 1. Find the length of the hypotenuse in each of the triangles below. Leave the answers in surd form where applicable.

(a)



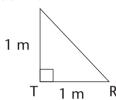
(b)



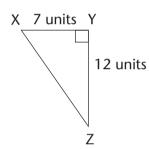
......

.....

(c) s



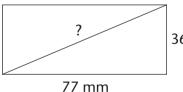
(d)



.....

2. A rectangle has sides with lengths 36 mm and 77 mm. Find the length of the rectangle's diagonal.

.....

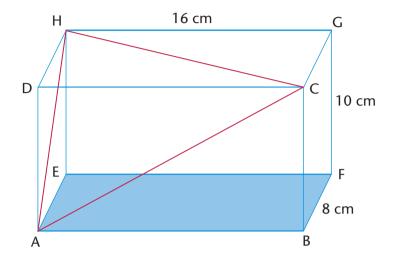


36 mm

3. \triangle ABC has $\widehat{A} = 90^{\circ}$, AB = 3 cm and AC = 5 cm. Make a rough sketch of the triangle, and then calculate the length of BC.

.....

4. A rectangular prism is made of glass. It has a length of 16 cm, a height of 10 cm and a breadth of 8 cm. ABCD and EFGH are two of its faces. \triangle ACH has been drawn inside the prism. Is \triangle ACH right-angled? Answer the questions to find out.



(a) Calculate the length of the sides of Δ ACH. Note that all three sides of the triangles are diagonals of rectangles. AC is in rectangle ABCD, AH is in ADHE and HC is in HDCG.

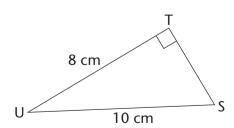
(b) Is Δ ACH right-angled? Explain your answer.

•••••

FINDING ANY MISSING SIDE IN A RIGHT-ANGLED TRIANGLE

Example:

Find the length of TS in the triangle below.



$$US^2 = TU^2 + TS^2$$

$$10^2 = 8^2 + TS^2$$

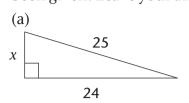
$$100 = 64 + TS^2$$

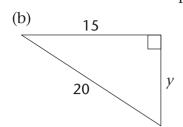
$$36 = TS^2$$

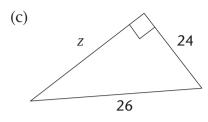
$$\sqrt{36}$$
 = TS

$$\therefore$$
 TS = 6 cm

1. In the right-angled triangles below, calculate the length of the sides that have not been given. Leave your answers in surd form where applicable.





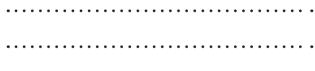


• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

- 2. Calculate the length of the third side of each of the following right-angled triangles. First draw a rough sketch of each of the triangles before you do any calculations. Round off your answers to two decimal places.
 - (a) \triangle ABC has AB = 12 cm, BC = 18 cm and \hat{A} = 90°. Calculate AC.

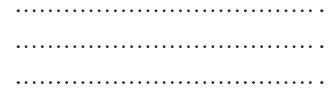


(b) ΔDEF has $\hat{F} = 90^{\circ}$, DE = 58 cm and DF = 41 cm. Calculate EF.

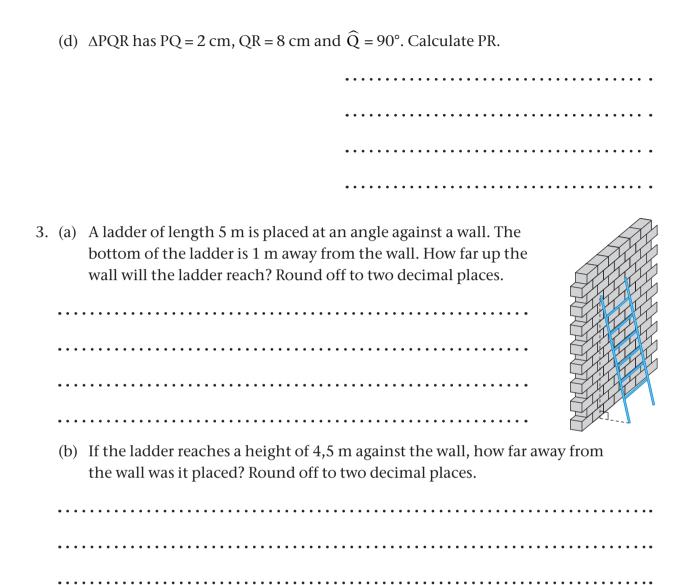


••••••••••••

(c) ΔJKL has $\hat{K} = 90^{\circ}$, JK = 119 m, KL = 167 m. Calculate JL.



.....



PYTHAGOREAN TRIPLES

Sets of **whole numbers** that can be used as the sides of a right-angled triangle are known as **Pythagorean triples**, for example:

3-4-5

5-12-13

7-24-25

16-30-34

20-21-29

You extend these triples by finding multiples of them. For examples, triples from the 3-4-5 set include the following:

3-4-5

6-8-10

9-12-15

12-16-20

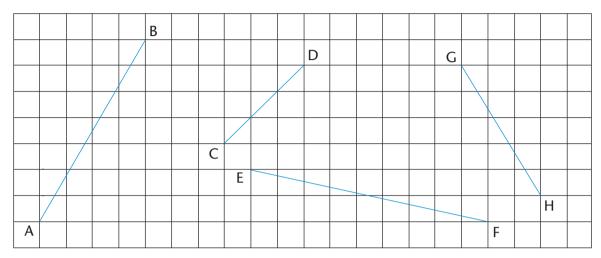
There are many old writings that record Pythagorean triples. For example, from 1900 to 1600 BC the Babylonians had already calculated very large Pythagorean triples, such as:

1 679-2 400-2 929.

How many Pythagorean triples can you find? What is the largest one you can find that is not a multiple of another one?

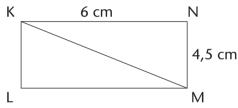
13.4 More practice using Pythagoras' Theorem

1. Four lines have been drawn on the grid below. Each square is 1 unit long. Calculate the lengths of the lines: AB, CD, EF and GH. Do the calculations in your exercise book and write the answers below. Leave your answers in surd form.

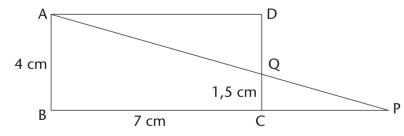


2. (a) Calculate the area of rectangle KLMN.

(b) Calculate the perimeter of ΔKLM.



3. ABCD is a rectangle with AB = 4 cm, BC = 7 cm and CQ = 1,5 cm. Round off your answers to two decimal places if the answers are not whole numbers.



(a) What is the length of QD?

(b) If CP = 4.2 cm, calculate the length of PQ.

•••••

(c) Calculate the length of AQ and the area of ΔAQD.
 4. MNST is a parallelogram. NR = 9 mm and MR = 12 mm.

and MR = 12 mm.

(a) Calculate the area of ΔMNR .

N 9 mm R 30 mm S

(b) Calculate the perimeter of MNST.

PYTHAGORAS' THEOREM AND OTHER TYPES OF TRIANGLES

Pythagoras' Theorem works only for right-angled triangles. But we can also use it to find out whether other triangles are acute or obtuse, as follows.

• If the square of the longest side is *less* than the sum of the squares of the two shorter sides, the *biggest angle is acute*.

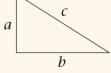
For example, in a 6-8-9 triangle: $6^2 + 8^2 = 100$ and $9^2 = 81$.

81 is less than 100 : the 6-8-9 triangle is acute.

• If the square of the longest side is *more* than the sum of the squares of the two shorter sides, the *biggest angle is obtuse*.

For example, in a 6-8-11 triangle: $6^2 + 8^2 = 100$ and $11^2 = 121$.

121 is more than 100 \therefore the 6-8-11 triangle is obtuse.



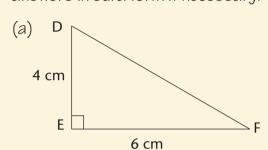
Complete the following table. It is based on the triangle on the right. Decide whether each triangle described is right-angled, acute or obtuse.

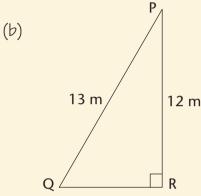
a	b	С	$a^2 + b^2$	c ²	Fill in =, > or <	Type of triangle
3	5	6	$3^2 + 5^2 = 9 + 25 = 34$	$6^2 = 36$	$a^2 + b^2 < c^2$	Acute
2	4	6			$a^2 + b^2 \cdot \dots \cdot c^2$	
5	7	9			$a^2 + b^2 \cdot \dots \cdot c^2$	
12	5	13			$a^2 + b^2 \cdot \dots \cdot c^2$	
12	16	20	$12^2 + 16^2 = 144 + 256 = 400$	$20^2 = 400$	$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$	Right-angled
7	9	11			$a^2 + b^2 \cdot \dots \cdot c^2$	
8	12	13			$a^2 + b^2 \dots c^2$	

WORKSHEET

1. Write down Pythagoras' Theorem in the way that you best understand it.

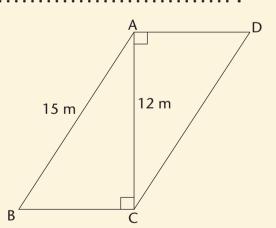
2. Calculate the lengths of the missing sides in the following triangles. Leave the answers in surd form if necessary.





- 3. ABCD is a parallelogram.
 - (a) Calculate the perimeter of ABCD.

(b) Calculate the area of ABCD.



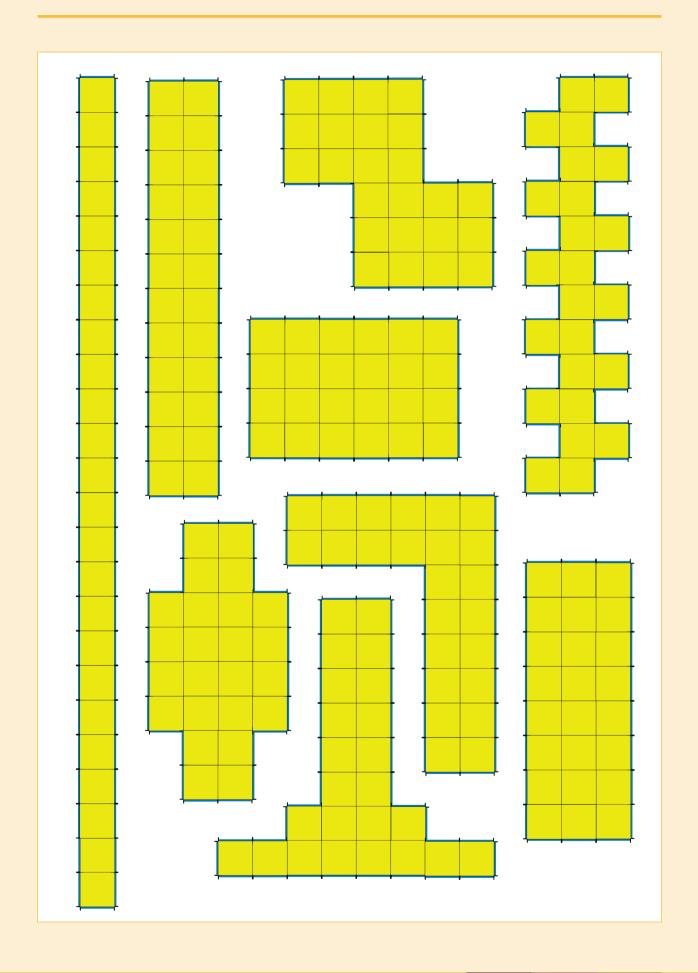
Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 248 2014/07/03 11:00:31 AM

CHAPTER 14 Area and perimeter of 2D shapes

In this chapter, you will revise how to calculate the perimeter and area of squares, rectangles, triangles and circles. The perimeter of a shape is the distance all the way around the sides of the shape. The area of a shape is the flat space inside the shape. You will also learn how to calculate the areas of parallelograms, rhombi, kites and trapeziums, as well as investigate the effect on the perimeter and area of a shape when its dimensions are doubled.

14.1 Area and perimeter of squares and rectangles	251
14.2 Area and perimeter of composite figures	253
14.3 Area and perimeter of circles	255
14.4 Converting between units	257
14.5 Area of other quadrilaterals	258
14.6 Doubling dimensions of a 2D shape	264

CHAPTER 14: AREA AND PERIMETER OF 2D SHAPES 249



Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 250 2014/07/03 11:00:31 AM

14 Area and perimeter of 2D shapes

14.1 Area and perimeter of squares and rectangles

REVISING CONCEPTS

Each block in figures A to F below measures
 1 cm × 1 cm. What is the perimeter and area of each of the figures?
 Complete the table below.

The **perimeter** (*P*) of a shape is the distance along the sides of the shape. The **area** (*A*) of a figure is the size of the flat surface enclosed by the figure.

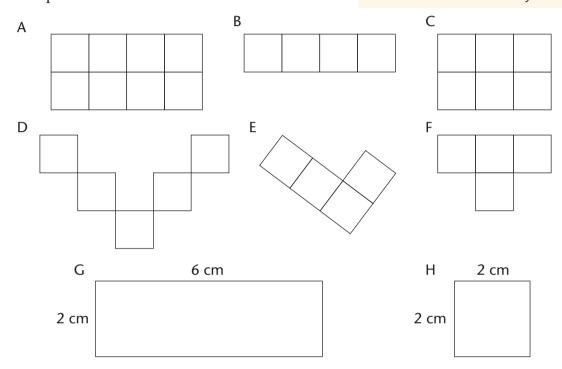


Figure	Perimeter	Area	Number of 1 cm × 1 cm squares
A			
В			
С			
D			
Е			
F			
G			
Н			

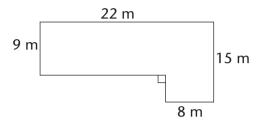
2.	Consider the rectangle below. It is formed by tessellating identical squares that are 1 cm by 1 cm each. The white part has squares that are hidden. (a) Write down, without counting, the total	To tessellate means to cover a surface with identical shapes in such a way that there are no gaps or overlaps. Another word for tessellating is tiling .
	number of squares that form this rectangle, including those that are hidden. Explain your reasoning.	
	•••••	
	•••••	
	(b) What is the area of the rectangle, including the white part?	
	Area of a rectangle = length × breadth	
	$= l \times b$	Both length (I) and breadth
	Area of a square $= l \times l$	(b) are expressed in the
	$= l^2$	same unit.
3.	Sipho and Theunis each paint a wall to earn some mossipho paints a wall 4 m high and 10 m long. Theunis's Who should be paid more? Explain.	
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	••••••••••••	•••••
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
4.	What is the area of a square with a length of 12 mm?	
	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	•••••	
5.	The area of a rectangle is 72 cm ² and its length is 8 cm.	. What is its breadth?
	•••••	
	•••••	
	•••••	

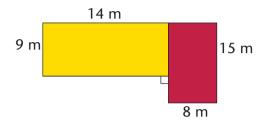
252 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 2

14.2 Area and perimeter of composite figures

BREAKING UP FIGURES AND PUTTING THEM BACK TOGETHER AGAIN

- 1. The diagram on the left below shows the floor plan of a room.
 - (a) We can calculate the area of the room by dividing the floor into two rectangles, as shown in the diagram on the right below.





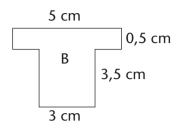
Area of the room = Area of yellow rectangle + Area of red rectangle = $(l \times b) + (l \times b)$ = $(14 \times 9) + (15 \times 8)$ = 126 + 120= 246 m^2

(b) The yellow part of the room has a wooden floor and the red part is carpeted. What is the area of the wooden floor? What is the area of the carpet?

(c) Calculate the area of the room using two different shapes. Draw a sketch.

2. Calculate the area of the figures below.

	1 cm		
4 cm	Α		
] 1 cm
	3	3 cm	



• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	•••••
•••••••••••••	•••••
•••••••••••••	•••••

3. Which of the following rules can be used to calculate the perimeter (*P*) of a rectangle? Explain.

- Perimeter = $2 \times (l + b)$
- Perimeter = l + b + l + b
- Perimeter = 2l + 2b
- Perimeter = l + b

l and *b* refer to the length and the breadth of a rectangle.

The following are againstont expressions for

The following are equivalent expressions for perimeter:

$$P = 2l + 2b$$
 and $P = 2(l + b)$ and $P = l + b + l + b$

4. Check with two classmates that the rule or rules you have chosen above correct; then apply it to calculate the perimeter of figure A. Think carefully!

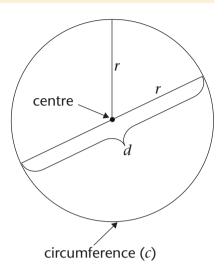
5. The perimeter of a rectangle is 28 cm and its breadth is 6 cm. What is its length?

14.3 Area and perimeter of circles

REVISING CONCEPTS FROM PREVIOUS GRADES

The perimeter of a circle is called the **circumference** of a circle. You will remember the following about circles from previous grades:

- The distance across the circle through its centre is called the **diameter** (*d*) of the circle.
- The distance from the centre of the circle to any point on the circumference is called the **radius** (*r*).
- The circumference (*c*) of a circle divided by its diameter is equal to the irrational value we call **pi** (π). To simplify calculations, we often use the approximate values: $\pi \approx 3,14$ or $\frac{22}{7}$.



The following are important formulae to remember:

- d = 2r and $r = \frac{1}{2}d$
- Circumference of a circle (*c*) = $2\pi r$
- Area of a circle $(A) = \pi r^2$

CIRCLE CALCULATIONS

In the following calculations, use $\pi = 3,14$ and round off your answers to two decimal places. If you take a square root, remember that length is always positive.

1. Calculate the perimeter and area of the following circles:

- (a) A circle with a radius of $5\ m$
- (b) A circle with a diameter of 18 mm

••••••

•••••••••••

••••••

.....

2.	Calculate the radius of a circle with: (a) a circumference of 53 cm	(b) a circumference of 206 mm
3.	Work out the area of the following shapes	s: В
	15 cm	d = 43 cm
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
4.	Calculate the radius and diameter of a cir (a) an area of 200m^2	cle with: (b) an area of 1 000 m ²
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	••••••••••••
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	••••••••••••
5.	Calculate the area of the shaded part.	
	••••••	r = 12 cm
	•••••	r = 7 cm
	•••••	•••••

14.4 Converting between units

CONVERTING BETWEEN UNITS USED FOR PERIMETER AND AREA

Always make sure that you use the correct units in your calculations. Practise the conversions below.

Remember: 1 cm = 10 mm 1 mm = 0,1 cm 1 m = 100 cm 1 cm = 0.01 m1 km = 1 000 m 1 m = 0,001 km

- 1. Convert the following:
 - (a) 34 cm =mm
 - (c) 226 m =.....cm
 - (e) 1.9 cm =..... mm
 - (g) $924 \text{ mm} = \dots \text{ m}$
- (b) 501 m =
- (d) $0.58 \text{ km} = \dots \text{ m}$
- (f) 73 mm =
- (h) $32,23 \text{ km} = \dots \text{ m}$

Remember, to convert between square units, you can use method shown below:

To convert cm² to m²:

Convert 50 cm² to m²

$$1 \text{ cm}^2 = 1 \text{ cm} \times 1 \text{ cm}$$

$$= 0.01 \text{ m} \times 0.01 \text{ m}$$

$$= 0,0001 \text{ m}^2$$

 $1 \text{ cm}^2 = 0.0001 \text{ m}^2$

$$\therefore 50 \text{ cm}^2 = 50 \times 0,0001 \text{ m}^2$$

= 0,005 m²

- 2. Convert to cm²:
 - (a) 650 mm^2

(b) 1 200 mm²

(c)	1Ω	m^2

(d) 0.045 m^2 (c) 18 m^2

(e) 93 mm²

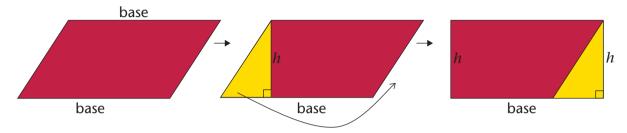
(f) 177 m^2

3. (a) Convert $93 \text{ mm}^2 \text{ to m}^2$. (b) Convert $0.017 \text{ km}^2 \text{ to m}^2$.

14.5 Area of other quadrilaterals

PARALLELOGRAMS

As shown below, a parallelogram can be made into a rectangle if a right-angled triangle from one side is cut off and moved to its other side.



So we can find the area of a parallelogram using the formula for the area of a rectangle: Area of rectangle $= l \times b$

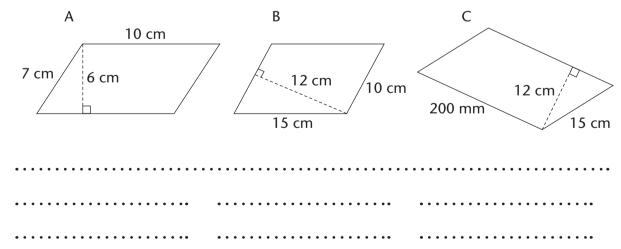
= (base of parallelogram) × (perpendicular height of parallelogram)

Area of parallelogram = Area of rectangle

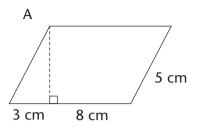
- \therefore Area of parallelogram = base × perp. height
- 1. (a) Copy the parallelogram above into your exercise book.
 - (b) Using the shorter side as the base of the parallelogram, follow the steps above to derive the formula for the area of a parallelogram.

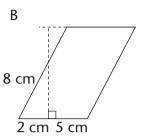
We can use any side of the parallelogram as the base, but we must use the perpendicular height on the side we have chosen.

 $2. \ \ Work out the area of the following parallelograms using the formula.$

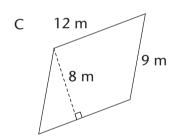


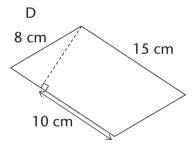
3. Work out the area of the parallelograms. Use the Theorem of Pythagoras to calculate the unknown sides you need. Remember to use the pre-rounded value for height and then round the final answer to two decimal places where necessary.





•	•	•	•	٠	•	• •	•	·	٠		• •		٠	٠	•		•	Ī	Ī	٠	•	•		 •	Ī			٠	•	•	•	٠	٠	•	•	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	• •	٠	٠	•	•	٠	•	• •	·	٠	٠
• •	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	• •			•	•	•	•	• •		 •	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•		•	•	• •	•	•		• •	•	• •	• •	•	•	•
• •	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	• •	• •	. •	•	•	•	•	• •		 •	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	• •	•	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	•	• •		•	• •	• •	•	•	•
• •	•	•		•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•	•	• (• •	•	•	•	•	•	• •		 •	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•		•	•		•	•			•	•	• •	•	•	•
• •	•	•		•	•		•	•		•		•		•	• •	• •	•	•		•	•	• •				•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•		•	•		•	•			•	•	• •			•
• •	•	•		•	•		•	•	•	•		•	•	•	• •	• •		•	•	•	•	• •	•	 •	•	•	,	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	• •	•	•	• •	•	•		•				•	•		•		•





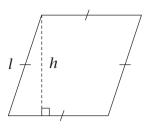
• • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
• • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
• • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
• • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •		••••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
• • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • •		•••••	

RHOMBI

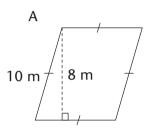
A rhombus is a parallelogram with all sides equal.

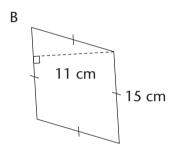
In the same way we derived the formula for the area of a parallelogram, we can show the following:

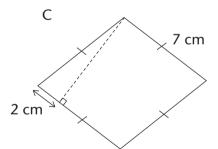


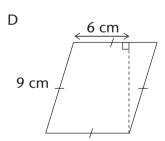


- 1. Work in your exercise book. Show how to derive the formula for the area of a rhombus.
- 2. Calculate the areas of the following rhombi. Round off answers to two decimal places where necessary.





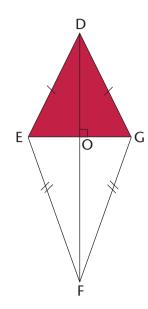




KITES

To calculate the area of a kite, you use one of its properties, namely that the diagonals of a kite are perpendicular.

Area of kite DEFG = Area of
$$\triangle$$
DEG + Area of \triangle EFG
= $\frac{1}{2}(b \times h) + \frac{1}{2}(b \times h)$
= $\frac{1}{2}(EG \times OD) + \frac{1}{2}(EG \times OF)$
= $\frac{1}{2}EG(OD + OF)$
= $\frac{1}{2}EG \times DF$



Notice that EG and DF are the diagonals of the kite.

∴ Area of a kite = $\frac{1}{2}$ (diagonal 1 × diagonal 2)

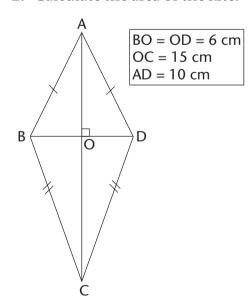
1. Calculate the area of kites with the following diagonals. Give your answers in m².

(a) 150 mm and 200 mm

(b) 25 cm and 40 cm

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • •
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • • • • • •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

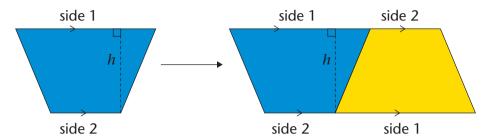
2. Calculate the area of the kite.



•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•
	•																																					
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

TRAPEZIUMS

A trapezium has two parallel sides. If we tessellate (tile) two trapeziums as shown in the diagram below, we form a parallelogram. (The yellow trapezium is the same size as the blue one. The base of the parallelogram is equal to the sum of the parallel sides of the trapezium.)



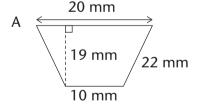
We can use the formula for the area of a parallelogram to work out the formula for the area of a trapezium as follows:

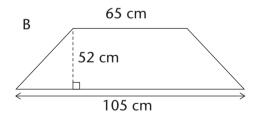
Area of parallelogram = base
$$\times$$
 height
= (side 1 + side 2) \times height

Area of trapezium =
$$\frac{1}{2}$$
 area of parallelogram
= $\frac{1}{2}$ (side 1 + side 2) × height

∴ Area of a trapezium =
$$\frac{1}{2}$$
 (sum of parallel sides) × perp. height

Calculate the area of the following trapeziums:

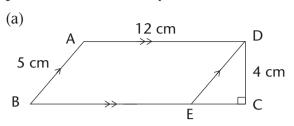


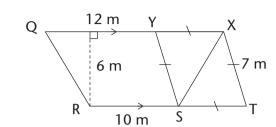


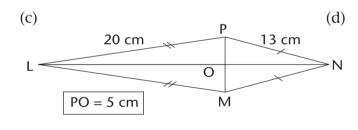
AREAS OF COMPOSITE SHAPES

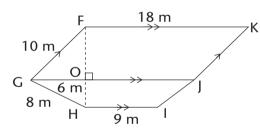
Calculate the areas of the following 2D shapes. Round off your answers to two decimal places where necessary.

(b)









14.6 Doubling dimensions of a 2D shape

Remember that a 2D shape has two dimensions, namely length and breadth. You have used lengths and breadths in different forms, to work out the perimeters and areas of shapes, for example:

- length and breadth for rectangles and squares
- bases and perpendicular heights for triangles, rhombi and parallelograms
- two diagonals for kites.

But how does doubling one or both of the dimensions of a figure affect the figure's perimeter and area? Doubling means to multiply by 2.

The four sets of figures on the next page are drawn on a grid of squares. Each row shows an original figure, the figure with one of its dimensions doubled, and the figure with both of its dimensions doubled. Each square has a side of 1 unit.

- 1. Work out the perimeter and area of each shape. Round off your answers to two decimal places where necessary.
- 2. Which figure in each set is congruent to the original figure?

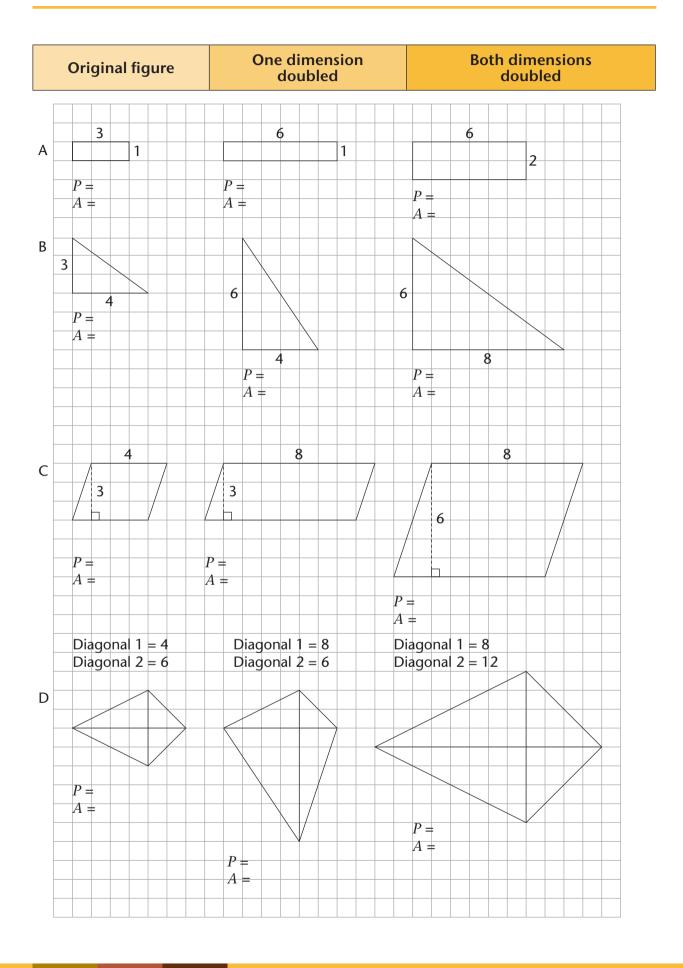
.....

3. Fill in the perimeter (*P*) and area (*A*) of each figure in the table below.

Figure	Original figure	Figure with both dimensions doubled
A	P =	P =
В	P =	P =
С	P =	P =
D	P =	P =

- 4. Look at the completed table above. What patterns do you notice? Choose one:
 - When both dimensions of a shape are doubled, its **perimeter is doubled** and its **area is doubled**.
 - When both dimensions of a shape are doubled, its **perimeter is doubled** and its area is **four times bigger**.

•••••••••••••••••••••••••



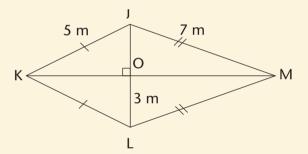
WORKSHEET

1. Write down the formulae for the following:

Perimeter of a square	
Perimeter of a rectangle	
Area of a square	
Area of a rectangle	
Area of a triangle	
Area of a rhombus	
Area of a kite	
Area of a parallelogram	
Area of a trapezium	
Diameter of a circle	
Circumference of a circle	
Area of a circle	

- 2. (a) Calculate the perimeter of the square and the area of the shaded parts of the square.
 - 6 cm

(b) Calculate the area of the kite.



•																																																															
•																																																															
•																																																															
•																																																															
•	• •	•	•	•	• •	 •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	 •	 •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	٠	•
•	• •	•	•	•	•	 •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•					•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	 				•	•	•	•				•	•	•	

AREA AND PERIMETER OF 2D SHAPES

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 266 2014/07/03 11:00:35 AM

TERM 2 Revision and assessment

Revision	
Construction of geometric figures	268
Geometry of 2D shapes	
Geometry of straight lines	273
Pythagoras' Theorem	
Area and perimeter of 2D shapes	
Assessment	

Revision

Remember to show all your steps of your working. Note that the diagrams drawn in this revision and assessment are not drawn to scale.

CONSTRUCTION OF GEOMETRIC FIGURES

Do not erase any construction arcs in these questions.

- 1. Construct and label the following triangles and quadrilaterals:
 - (a) Triangle FGH where GH = 6,2 cm; $\hat{G} = 36^{\circ}$ and $\hat{H} = 63^{\circ}$

(b) Parallelogram PQRS where PQ = 5,7 cm, PS = 7,8 cm and \hat{R} = 112°

2. (a) Construct Δ KLM where KL = 9,4 cm; LM = 7 cm and MK = 7,8 cm.

- (b) Construct the perpendicular bisectors of all three sides of the triangle drawn in part (a). You should find that they all go through the same point.
- (c) Use the point of intersection as the midpoint of a circle that passes through all three vertices of the triangle. Use your compass to draw this circle.
- 3. Construct the following angles without using a protractor:
 - (a) 45°

(b) 210°

- 4. Construct a regular hexagon in your exercise books by following these instructions:
 - Construct a horizontal line, AB, which is 2 cm long.
 - Set your compass to 2 cm, and from each of A and B, draw an arc above line AB. Call the point that the arcs intersect O.
 - Draw a circle of radius 2 cm, centred on O. It should go through A and B.
 - Place the compass on point B, and draw an arc crossing the circle on the side opposite to A. Call this point C.
 - Repeat the above step to create points D to F.
 - Join B to C with a straight line. Repeat with C to D, and so on, until you get back to point A. You have now constructed a regular hexagon!

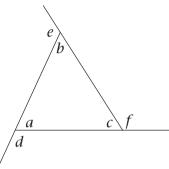
GEOMETRY OF 2D SHAPES

1. The following table summarises the properties of diagonals of quadrilaterals. Complete the table by placing ticks in the appropriate blocks.

	Parallelogram	Rectangle	Square	Rhombus	Trapezium	Kite
Diagonals						
bisect each						
other						
Diagonals						
cut at right						
angles						

2. Study the following figure.

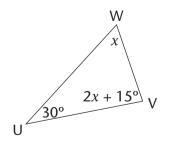
Note that *d*, *e* and *f* are the exterior angles of the triangle.



(a) Write down an equation that shows the relationship between angle *d* and the sum of two other angles in the image.

(b) Determine the size of d + e + f. Give reasons for your answer.

3. Determine the size of \widehat{V} . Show all steps of your working and give reasons when using any geometrical theorem:

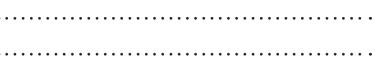


4.	DEFG is a square with DF = 12 cm. Determine the length of the side of the square, correct to two decimal places. Show all steps of your working.
	Give reasons when using any geometrical theorem:
	/ \>E
	G
5.	Are the following pairs of triangles congruent? If they are, write down the relationship in the form $\Delta XYZ \equiv \Delta ORQ$, where X corresponds with O, Y with R, and so on. Also state the congruency condition (case) that proves the two triangles are congruent (for example, sss). If they are not congruent, explain why they are not congruent.
	Note : the triangles are not drawn to scale.
	(a)
	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
	(b)
	Γ
	H J M
6.	Provide a formal proof that the two triangles in the diagram below are congruent:
	$\stackrel{P}{\longleftarrow} \stackrel{Q}{\longleftarrow} Q$
	* /
	R R
	Γ

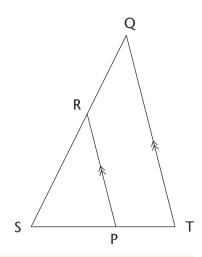
Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 272 2014/07/03 11:00:37 AM

7. Study the diagram alongside:

Prove that \triangle SRP \parallel \triangle SQT.

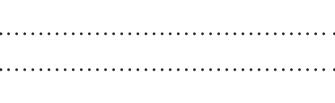




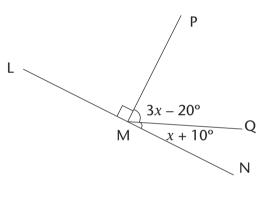


GEOMETRY OF STRAIGHT LINES

1. Determine the size of $P\widehat{M}Q$.



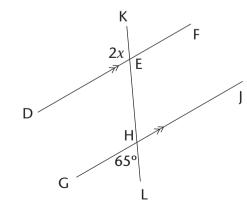


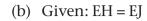


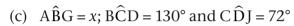
2. Determine the size of *x* in each case. Show all steps of your working and give reasons when using any geometrical theorem:

(a)

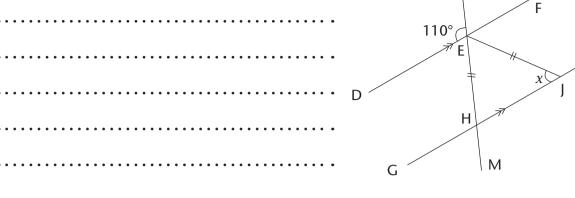


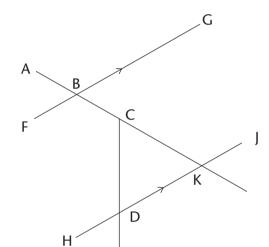


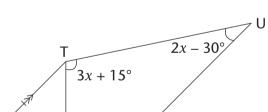


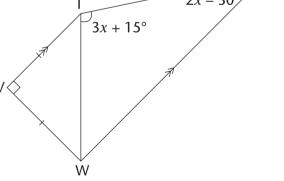


(d)

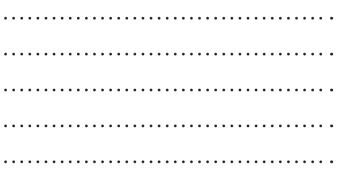


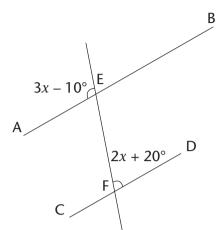






3. For which value of *x* are AB and CD parallel? Show all steps of your working and give reasons when using any geometrical theorem.

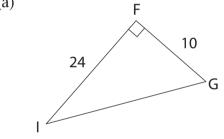




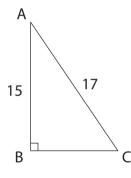
PYTHAGORAS' THEOREM

1. Calculate the missing side length in each of the following triangles:

(a)

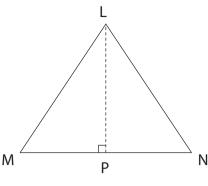


(b)



2. A river is 50 m wide. Assume that the river flows completely straight. If Camelia swims across the river to a point on the bank 12 m downstream from the point directly opposite her, how far will she swim? Give your answer correct to one decimal place.

3. Triangle LMN is isosceles, with LM = LN. MN = 36 cm and LP = 24 cm. Determine the perimeter of the triangle.



.....

••••••

4. DEFG is a rectangle, with DE = 20 cm and diagonal EG = 101 cm. Determine the area of the rectangle.

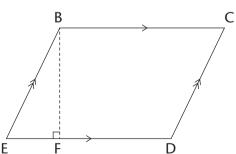
5. Is it possible to have a right-angled triangle with the following side lengths: 36; 76 and 84? Show all working necessary to support your answer.

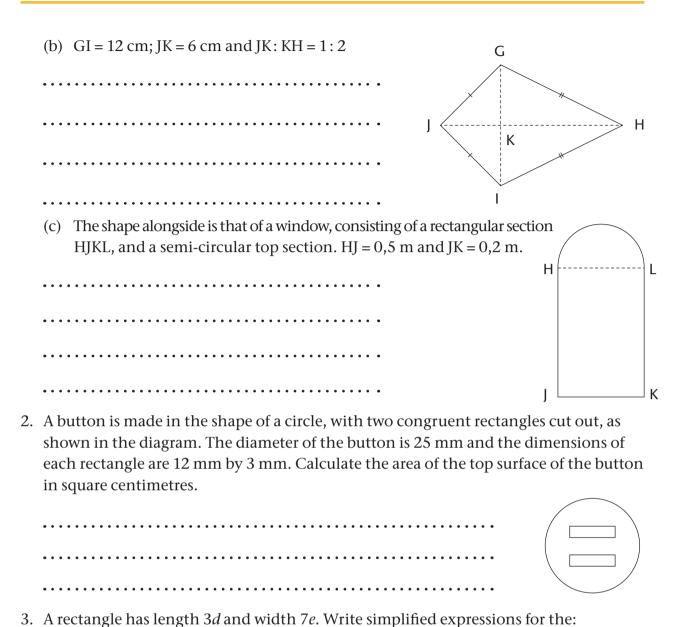
AREA AND PERIMETER OF 2D SHAPES

1. Determine (i) the perimeter, and (ii) the area, of each of the following shapes. If necessary, give your answers in centimetres or square centimetres, correct to one decimal place:

(a) BF = 8 cm; BC = 10 cm; FD = 6 cm







4. Complete the unshaded blocks in following table to show the impact on the perimeter and area of <u>doubling one dimension</u> of the shape (for a rectangle, the

length; for a triangle, the base; and for a circle, the radius). Assume that the original perimeter was x, and the original area was y. One answer has already been added for you.

	Rectangle	Triangle	Circle
New perimeter/circumference			
New area	2 <i>y</i>		

(a) Area of the rectangle

(b) Perimeter of the rectangle

Assessment

In this section, the numbers in brackets at the end of a question indicate the number of marks the question is worth. Use this information to help you determine how much working is needed. The total number of marks allocated to the assessment is 60.

1. (a) Construct a triangle RST with RS = 7,3 cm,
$$\hat{R} = 42^{\circ}$$
; and $\hat{S} = 67^{\circ}$. (3)

(b) Construct the bisectors of each of the angles of the triangle that you constructed in part (a). You should find that they have a common point of intersection. (4)
(c) Use the common point of intersection of the bisectors of the angles that you constructed in part (b) as the midpoint of a circle touching all three sides of the triangle. Use your compass to draw this circle. (1)
(d) Is it always possible to draw a triangle given the length of one of the lines and the sizes of the angles adjacent to that line (as was given in part (a), for example)? Explain your answer. (2)

"Its diagonals cut perpendicularly, but n	ot all the sides of the sh	ape are equal
in length." Help Sam by writing down th	ne special name of the s	hape. (
Look at the figure below. Write down an	equation, and use it to	determine
the size of x .		(.
	20 120	4x - 32°/
v the diagram alongside:	$\angle 2X + 1Z^{\circ} + \Rightarrow$	/
Prove that $\Delta JNM \equiv \Delta KNL$.		(
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		X 4
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	••••	N
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		N
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		x **
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	K-	
Do you have enough information to pro answer.	ve that $ΔJLM \equiv ΔKML$?	Explain your (
ii · Lt ·	The diagonals cut perpendicularly, but not not length." Help Sam by writing down the look at the figure below. Write down an he size of x . The diagram alongside: Prove that $\Delta JNM \equiv \Delta KNL$. The diagram alongside: The diagram alongside:	$2x + 12^{\circ}$ To the diagram alongside: Prove that ΔJNM = ΔKNL.

(e) Construct the following angle without using a protractor: 150° .

(2)

	(c) Study the diagram alongside: Civen that ACDE = AECC, prove that ED CE Cive reasons for all statements
	Given that $\triangle CDE \equiv \triangle FCG$, prove that ED GF. Give reasons for all statements.
	$ \begin{array}{c c} C & E \\ \hline G \end{array} $
	F
3.	Study the diagram below. All numerical values represent lengths of sides:
	$ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$
	(a) Briefly explain why $\triangle ABF \parallel \mid \triangle ACD \mid$ (a full proof is NOT required). (1)
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••
	 (b) Use the similarity of the triangles to determine the lengths of the line segments (correct to one decimal place). (i) x
	(ii) <i>y</i>
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••
4.	Study the diagram alongside. Determine, with reasons, the size of \widehat{U} in terms of x . (4)
	R R
	* * *

280 MATHEMATICS GRADE 9: TERM 2

5.	Study the diagram alongside. Given that $MK = ML$, determine, with reasons, the value of z .	(5)
	M _A	
	N N	
	6 <u>4</u> °	
	Z	[⊾] L
	••••••	
	••••••	
6.		(3)
	31° J	
	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	
	122°	
	C	
7.	Study the diagram alongside. QRST is a rectangle. All numerical values represent lengths:	R 8 V
	(a) Calculate the length of UT. (3) 28	٧
	T	S
	(b) Calculate the perimeter of triangle TUV, correct to one decimal place. (4)
	••••••	•
		, •
		•
		. •
	••••••	

Maths_LB_gr9_bookA.indb 281 2014/07/03 11:00:40 AM

8.	A rectangle has an area of $6a^2$ and a perimeter of $10a$. Determine, in terms of a , the dimensions of the rectangle.	(2)
	••••••	•
	••••••••••••••••••	•
9.	On the grid below, draw a parallelogram that has the same area as the triangle. ((2)

10. The perimeter of a rhombus is 60 cm, and the length of one of its diagonals is 24 cm.

(a) Calculate the length of a side of the rhombus.

(b) Show that the area of the rhombus is 216 cm².

(4)